## SHARP SERVICE MANUAL



## DIGITAL LASER COPIER/ PRINTER

## model AR-5127

## CONTENTS

[1] NOTE FOR SERVICING ..... 1-1
[2] SYSTEM CONFIGURATION ..... 2-1
[3] SPECIFICATIONS ..... 3-1
[4] CONSUMABLE PARTS ..... 4-1
[5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION ..... 5-1
[6] EXTERNAL VIEW AND INTERNAL STRUCTURE ..... 6-1
[7] ADJUSTMENTS, SETTING ..... 7-1
[8] SIMULATION ..... 8-1
[9] TROUBLE CODE LIST ..... 9-1
[10] DISASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY AND MAINTENANCE ..... 10-1
[11] OTHERS ..... 11-1

Parts marked with " $\triangle$ " are important for maintaining the safety of the set. Be sure to replace these parts with specified ones for maintaining the safety and performance of the set.

## CAUTION

This product is a class 1 laser product that complies with 21CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11 of the CDRH standard and IEC825. This means that this machine does not produce hazardous laser radiation. The use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
This laser radiation is not a danger to the skin, but when an exact focusing of the laser beam is achieved on the eye's retina, there is the danger of spot damage to the retina.
The following cautions must be observed to avoid exposure of the laser beam to your eyes at the time of servicing.

1) When a problem in the laser optical unit has occurred, the whole optical unit must be exchanged as a unit, not as individual parts.
2) Do not look into the machine with the main switch turned on after removing the developer unit, toner cartridge, and drum cartridge.
3) Do not look into the laser beam exposure slit of the laser optical unit with the connector connected when removing and installing the optical system.
4) The middle frame contains the safety interlock switch.

Do not defeat the safety interlock by inserting wedges or other items into the switch slot.

## Warning!

This product is a class A product.
If it is operated in households, offices or similar surroundings, it can produce radio interferences at other appliances, so that the user has to take adequate countermeasures.

## CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

## LASER KLASSE 1

## LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE

## KLASS 1 LASERAPPARAT

## VAROITUS!

LAITTEEN KÄYTTÄMINEN MUULLA KUIN TÄSSÄ KÄYTTÖOHJEESSA MAINITULLA TAVALLA SAATTAA ALTISTAA KÄYTTÄJÄN TURVALLISUUSLUOKAN 1 YLITTÄVÄLLE NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASERSÄTEILYLLE.

## VARNING

OM APPARATEN ANVÄNDS PÅ ANNAT SÄTT ÄN I DENNA BRUKSANVISNING SPECIFICERATS, KAN ANVÄNDAREN UTSÄTTAS FÖR OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, SOM ÖVERSKRIDER GRÄNSEN FÖR LASERKLASS 1.

## CAUTION

INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION,
WHEN OPEN AND INTERLOCKS DEFEATED. AVOID EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

VORSICHT
UNSICHTBARELASERSTRAHLUNG,
WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNETUND
SICHERHEITSVERRIEGELUNG ÜBERBRÜCKT. NICHT DEMSTRAHLAUSSETZEN.

## VARO!

AVATTAESSA JA SUOJALUKITUS OHITETTAESSA OLET ALTTIINA NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASERSÄTEILYLLE ÄLÄ KATSO SÄTEESEEN.

## ADVARSEL

USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING VED ÅBNING, NÅR
SIKKERHEDSBRYDERE ER UDE AF
FUNKTION. UNDGÅ UDSAETTELSE FOR
STRÅLNING.

VARNING!
OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD OCH SPÄRREN ÄR URKOPPLAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN. - STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.


Disconnect the AC cord before servicing the unit.
[1] NOTE FOR SERVICING

1. Warning for servicing ..... 1-1
2. Precautions for servicing ..... 1-1
3. Note for installing site. ..... 1-1
[2] SYSTEM CONFIGURATION
4. Structure ..... 2-1
A. Hardware ..... 2-1
5. System outline (Options) ..... 2-2
[3] SPECIFICATIONS
6. Basic specifications ..... 3-1
7. Operation specifications ..... 3-1
A. Common operation ..... 3-1
B. Copy mode ..... 3-1
8. Engine specifications ..... 3-2
A. Operation and display section ..... 3-2
B. Paper feed, transport, paper exit section ..... 3-2
C. Optical (Image scanning) section ..... 3-3
D. Scanner (exposure) section ..... 3-3
E. Image process section ..... 3-3
F. Fusing ..... 3-4
G. Drive ..... 3-4
9. Safety and environmental protection standards. ..... 3-4
10. Environment conditions ..... 3-4
[4] CONSUMABLE PARTS
11. List ..... 4-1
A. LAG ..... 4-1
B. SMEF (Middle East, Africa)/Israel ..... 4-1
C. Asia affiliates/Asia agent/STCL/SRH/SRS/SRSSC/SBI ..... 4-2
12. Production number identification ..... 4-3
13. Environment conditions ..... 4-3
A. Ambient conditions for transporting ..... 4-3
B. Ambient storage conditions (sealed) ..... 4-3
C. Operating ambient conditions ..... 4-3
14. Life (packed conditions) ..... 4-3
[5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION
15. Removal of protective material and fixing screw ..... 5-1
16. Removal and storage of fixing pin ..... 5-1
17. Developer cartridge installation ..... 5-1
18. Toner cartridge installation ..... 5-2
19. Toner concentration sensor level adjustment ..... 5-2
20. Paper size selection for paper feed tray ..... 5-2
[6] EXTERNAL VIEW AND INTERNAL STRUCTURE
21. External view. ..... 6-1
22. Internal ..... 6-1
23. Operation panel ..... 6-2
A. Key position ..... 6-2
B. LCD panel ..... 6-2
24. Motor, Solenoid, Clutch ..... 6-3
25. Sensor. ..... 6-3
26. PWB unit. ..... 6-4
27. Section ..... 6-4
[7] ADJUSTMENTS, SETTING
28. List of adjustment items ..... 7-1
29. Copier adjustment. ..... 7-1
A. Process section ..... 7-1
B. Mechanism section ..... 7-2
C. Image density (exposure) adjustment ..... 7-9
[8] SIMULATION
30. Operating procedures and operations ..... 8-1
A. Basic operation ..... 8-1
B. Simulation kinds and valid key functions ..... 8-1
31. Simulation code list ..... 8-2
32. Details ..... 8-4
[9] TROUBLE CODE LIST
33. List ..... 9-1
34. Self diagnostics ..... 9-2
[10] DISASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY AND MAINTENANCE
35. Maintenance table. ..... 10-1
36. Counter clear ..... 10-1
37. List of disassembly and assembly ..... 10-1
38. Details. ..... 10-2
A. Process unit. ..... 10-2
B. Developing section ..... 10-3
C. Fusing section ..... 10-4
D. Paper feed section ..... 10-6
E. Side door unit ..... 10-10
F. 1st paper exit unit ..... 10-10
G. Laser unit ..... 10-12
H. Power unit ..... 10-13
I. PWB ..... 10-13
J. Ozone filter ..... 10-14
[11] OTHERS
39. Flash ROM version up procedure ..... 11-1
A. Program download procedure (Main body program) ..... 11-1
40. User programs ..... 11-2

## [1] NOTE FOR SERVICING

This Service Manual uses some photographs to assure safe operation. This Service Manual uses some photographs to assure safe operation. Please understand the meanings of photographs before servicing.
$\lfloor$ WARNING: If this WARNING should be ignored, a serious danger to life or a serious injury would be resulted.
CAUTION: If this CAUTION should be ignored, an injury or a damage to properties would be resulted.

## 1. Warning for servicing

1) Be sure to connect the power cord only to a power outlet that meets the specified voltage and current requirements.
Avoid complex wiring, which may lead to a fire or an electric shock. It may cause a fire or an electric shock.
2) If there is any abnormality such as a smoke or an abnormal smell, interrupt the job and disconnect the power plug.
It may cause a fire or an electric shock.
3) Be sure to connect the grounding wire. If an electric leakage occurs without grounding, a fire or an electric shock may be the result.
To protect the machine and the power unit from lightening, grounding must be made.
4) When connecting the grounding wire, never connect it to the following points.
It may cause an explosion, a fire or an electric shock.

- Gas tube
- Lightning conductor
- A water pipe or a water faucet, which is not recognized as a grounding object by the authorities.
- Grounding wire for telephone line

5) Do not damage, brake, or work the power cord.

Do not put heavy objects on the power cable. Do not bend it forcibly or do not pull it extremely.
It may cause a fire or an electric shock.
6) Keep the power cable away from a heat source.

Do not insert the power plug with dust on it into a power outlet.
It may cause a fire or an electric shock.
7) Do not put a receptacle with water in it or a metal piece which may drop inside the machine.
It may cause a fire or an electric shock.
8) With wet or oily hands, do not touch the power plug, do not insert the telephone line jack, do not operate the machine, or do not perform servicing.
It may cause an electric shock.

## 2. Precautions for servicing

1) When servicing, disconnect the power plug, the printer cable, the network cable, and the telephone line from the machine, except when performing the communication test, etc.
It may cause an injury or an electric shock.
2) There is a high temperature area inside the machine. Use an extreme care when servicing.
It may cause a burn.
3) There is a high voltage section inside the machine which may cause an electric shock. Be careful when servicing.
4) Do not disassemble the laser unit. Do not insert a reflective material such as a screwdriver in the laser beam path.
It may damage eyes by reflection of laser beams.
5) When servicing with the machine operating, be careful not to squeeze you hands by the chain, the belt, the gear, and other driving sections.
6) Do not leave the machine with the cabinet disassembled.

Do not allow any person other than a serviceman to touch inside the machine. It may cause an electric shock, a burn, or an injury.
7) When servicing, do not breathe toner, developer, and ink excessively. Do not get them in the eyes.
If toner, developer, or ink enters you eyes, wash it away with water immediately, and consult a doctor if necessary.
8) The machine has got sharp edges inside. Be careful not to damage fingers when servicing.
9) Do not throw toner or a toner cartridge in a fire. Otherwise, toner may pop and burn you.
10) When replacing the lithium battery of the PWB, use a specified one only.
If a battery of different specification is used, it may be broken, causing breakdown or malfunction of the machine.
11) When carrying a unit with PWB or electronic parts installed to it, be sure to put it in an anti-static-electricity bag.
It may cause a breakdown or malfunctions.

## 3. Note for installing site

Do not install the machine at the following sites.

1) Place of high temperature, high humidity, low temperature, low humidity, place under an extreme change in temperature and humidity.
Paper may get damp and form dews inside the machine, causing paper jam or copy dirt.
For operating and storing conditions, refer to the specifications described later.
2) Place of much vibrations

It may cause a breakdown.
3) Poorly ventilated place

An electro-static type copier will produce ozone inside it.
The quantity of ozone produced is designed to a low level so as not to affect human bodies. However, continuous use of such a machine may produce a smell of ozone. Install the machine in a well ventilated place, and ventilate occasionally.
4) Place of direct sunlight.

Plastic parts and ink may be deformed, discolored, or may undergo qualitative change.
It may cause a breakdown or copy dirt.
5) Place which is full of organic gases such as ammonium

The organic photoconductor (OPC) drum used in the machine may undergo qualitative change due to organic gases such as ammonium.
Installation of this machine near a diazo-type copier may result in dirt copy.
6) Place of much dust

When dusts enter the machine, it may cause a breakdown or copy dirt.
7) Place near a wall

Some machine require intake and exhaust of air.
If intake and exhaust of air are not properly performed, copy dirt or a breakdown may be resulted.
8) Unstable or slant surface

If the machine drops or fall down, it may cause an injury or a breakdown.
If there are optional paper desk and the copier desk specified, it is recommendable to use them.
When using the optional desk, be sure to fix the adjuster and lock the casters.
[2] SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

## 1. Structure

## A. Hardware

Block diagram


## 2. System outline (Options)

| Option |  | Main unit model | NOTE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Item | Model |  |  |
| Reversing single pass feeder | AR-RP3 | Y |  |
| Single pass feeder | AR-SP4 | Y |  |
| 500-sheet paper feed unit | AR-D11N | Y |  |
| 2X500-sheet paper feed unit | AR-D12N | Y |  |
| Job separator tray kit | AR-TR3 | Y |  |
| Finisher | AR-FN5N | Y | For connection of the sort and staple, the AR-EB4 is required. |
| Facsimile expansion kit | AR-FX4 | Y |  |
| Fax memory 2MB | AR-MM5 | Y |  |
| 4MB | AR-MM6 | Y |  |
| 8MB | AR-MM7 | Y |  |
| Dual function board | AR-EB4 | Y |  |

Y: Installable
For details of the options, refer to the Service Manual of each option.

## (1) Main units



## (2) Options

AR-RP3
Reversing single pass feeder
Iob separator tray kit

## [3] SPECIFICATIONS

## 1. Basic specifications

(1) Type

| Machine Type |
| :--- |
| (2) Target users |
| Average Desktop type <br> Max. 50,000 to 13,000 sheets/month |

## (3) External dimensions

| Packaged | $780(\mathrm{~W}) \times 760(\mathrm{D}) \times 840(\mathrm{H}) \mathrm{mm}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Body | $623(\mathrm{~W}) \times 585.5(\mathrm{D}) \times 640.5(\mathrm{H}) \mathrm{mm}$ |

(4) Weight

Packaged
About 55.95 kg
Copier body
42.5 kg

## (5) Machine life

800,000 sheets or 5 years

## 2. Operation specifications

## A. Common operation

(1) Warm up time

| After turned on | Under 40 seconds |
| :--- | :---: |
| Recovery from power-save mode | Under 10 seconds |
| Recovery from paper jam | 10 sec. |

## (2) Jam recovery time

About 10sec (Leaving the machine for 60 sec after opening the door, standard condition, polygon stop.)
B. Copy mode
(1) Document size

| Max. document size | A3 paper $(11 " \times 17$ ") |
| :--- | :--- |

## (2) Picture quality mode

| Picture quality mode | Density adjustment <br> step | Toner save mode |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Auto mode | 1 step | Selectable |
| Character mode | 5 steps | Selectable |
| Text/Photo mode | 5 steps | Selectable |
| Photo mode | 5 steps | - |

(3) Copy magnification ratio

| Copy magnification ratio | Magnification range/fixed magnification |
| :---: | :---: |
| Fixed magnification mode | Standard 4R+5E <br> AB Series: $50,70,81,86,100,115,122,141$, 200, 400\% <br> Inch Series: 50, 64, 77, 95, 100, 121, 129, <br> 141, 200, 400\% <br> (However, 400\% is inhibited when SPF/RSPF is used.) <br> With AR-EB4 installed, $5 R+5 \mathrm{E}$ <br> AB Series: $25,50,70,81,86,100,115,122$, 141, 200, 400\% <br> Inch Series: 25, 50, 64, 77, 95, 100, 121, 129, 141, 200, 400\% <br> (However, $400 \%$ is inhibited when SPF/RSPF is used.) |
| Zoom width | Standard: 50 to $400 \%$ (50 to 200\% for SPF/ RSPF) <br> With AR-EB4 installed: 25 to $400 \%$ ( 50 to 200\% for SPF/RSPF) |


| Copy magnification <br> ratio | Magnification range/fixed magnification |
| :--- | :--- |
| Independent <br> magnification width | Standard: 50 to $400 \%$ for horizontal/ <br> vertical (50 to 200\% for SPF/RSPF) <br> With AR-EB4 installed: 25 to 400\% for <br> horizontal/vertical (50 to 200\% for SPF/RSPF) |
| Magnification <br> precision | Normal copy: $100 \% \pm 1.0 \%$ <br> Enlargement copy: Set magnification $\pm 1.0 \%$ <br> Reduction copy: Set magnification $\pm 1.0 \%$ |

(4) Job speed
a. First Copy Time

| Normal | Less than 4.8 seconds (when the single copy) |
| :--- | :--- |

b. Multi copy speed (sheets/minute)

- Copy magnification

| Document Size | (Normal copy/Reduction copy (50\% to <br> $99 \%) /$ /nlargement copy $(100 \%$ to 200\%) |
| :--- | :---: |
| A3 | 15 |
| B4 | 17 |
| A4 (Horizontal feed) | 27 |
| A4 (Vertical feed) | 18 |
| B5 (Horizontal feed) | 27 |
| B5 (Vertical feed) | 21 |
| $11^{\prime \prime} \times 17^{\prime \prime}$ | 15 |
| $8-1 / 2^{\prime \prime} \times 14^{\prime \prime}$ | 16 |
| $8-1 / 2^{\prime \prime} \times 13^{\prime \prime}$ | 17 |
| $8-1 / 2^{\prime \prime} \times 11^{\prime \prime}$ (Horizontal <br> feed) | 27 |
| $8-1 / 2^{\prime \prime} \times 11^{\prime \prime}$ (Vertical <br> feed) | 18 |
| A5/INV | 27 |

* The slowest speed is listed in enlargement/reduction copy.
* Single-side copy
(5) Max. multi-copy (print) quantity


## 999 sheets

(6) Picture quality
a. Image process

| Picture quality mode | Image process (Software) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Auto mode | • 2 gradations |
| Text mode | • Area separation |
| Text/Photo mode | • Error diffusion |
| Photo mode |  |

## b. Toner save mode

| Set with the key operator program. | Default: ON |
| :--- | :--- |

c. Zoom method

| Main scanning <br> direction | Performed through image processing |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sub scanning direction | Performed by image processing and <br> changing scanning speed |

## d. Resolution

|  | Main scanning direction | Sub scanning direction |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Scan | 400 dpi | 600 dpi |
| Output | 600 dpi | 600 dpi |


| Copymagnification <br> ratio$\quad$$\|c\|$ | Center | Corners |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | - | - |
| $50 \%$ to $69 \%$ | 3.2 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ | 2.8 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ |
| $70 \%$ to $94 \%$ | 3.6 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ | 3.2 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ |
| $95 \%$ to $105 \%$ | 5.0 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ | 4.5 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ |
| $106 \%$ to $141 \%$ | 5.0 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ | 4.5 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ |
| $142 \%$ to $400 \%$ | 5.0 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ | 4.5 line $/ \mathrm{mm}$ |

e. Gradation

| Read | 256 gradations |
| :--- | :--- |
| Write | 2 gradations |

## 3. Engine specifications

A. Operation and display section

| Display unit | LED display system |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation system | Button switch system |

B. Paper feed, transport, paper exit section
(1) Paper feed ability

| Paper feed <br> section | 2 cassettes + multi manual feed |
| :--- | :--- |
| Paper feed <br> capacity | $500 \times 2+100$ |
| Document Size | AB Series: A3 to A6R <br> Inch Series: $11 " \times 17^{\prime \prime}$ to $8.5 " \times 5.5^{\prime \prime}$ |
| Remaining <br> detection | Cassette section: empty detection only available <br> Manual paper feed section: empty detection only <br> available |

- Details of paper feed section

| Capacity | - |
| :--- | :--- |
| Paper weight | 56 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(15$ to 21.3 lbs$)$ |
| Document Size | AB Series: A3/B4/A4/A4R/B5/B5R/A5 <br> Inch Series: $8.5 \times 11 / 8.5 \times 14 / 11 \times 17 / 8.5 \times 13 /$ <br> $8.5 \times 11 \mathrm{R} / 8.5 \times 5.5$ |
| Paper kind | Standard paper $\left(56\right.$ to $\left.80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$, special paper |
| Special paper | Reproduction paper |
| Paper size <br> selection | User operation (LCD panel operation) |
| Slide switch | Yes |
| Cassette <br> attachment/ <br> detachment | A5, B5, $8.5 \times 5.5$ (only for upper cassette) <br> B5 is not applicable to lower cassette (2nd <br> stage). |
| Remarks |  |

- Manual feed section

| Capacity | 100 sheets $\left(52 \mathrm{~g}\right.$ to $\left.80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Paper weight | 52 to $128 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}(14$ to 34.1 lbs$)$ |
| Document Size | AB Series: A3 to A6R <br> Inch Series: $11 " \times 17$ " to $8.5 " \times 5.5 "$ |
| Paper kind | Multi feed: Standard paper ( 52 to $80 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ), <br> special paper (Reproduction paper/OHP/label <br> paper/postcard/envelope) <br> Single feed: Standard paper ( 52 to $128 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ ), <br> special paper (Reproduction paper/OHP/label <br> paper/postcard/envelope) |
| Size detection | Yes |
| Guide display | A3/A4,11,B4/B5,8.5,A4R/A5,B5R,A5R,5.5 |

* When poor image quality is resulted by the use of OHP sheet, adjust with SIM 44-34.


## (2) Finishing ability

| Paper exit section | Paper exit tray (1 tray) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Capacity | 500 sheets |

(3) Job separator exit tray (AR-TR3)
a. Condition

In case of Optional function (printer, FAX) is set up as MFD.
b. Simultaneous wrapping in kit

Job separator tray
Setting manual book

## c. Simultaneous wrapping

Setting manual book

## d. Function

This exit tray is set up above main exit tray, and can separate copier exit, printer exit and FAX exit.
e. Many of tray

1 (this tray can not set up more than 2)
f. Separator system
by control of main machine
g. Exit paper size

| Upper exit tray (Job separator <br> tray) | AB system | A 3 to A 6 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Inch system | $11 \times 17$ to $8.5 \times 5.5$ |
| Lower exit tray (Main machine <br> exit tray) | AB system | A 3 to A 6 |
|  | Inch system | $11 \times 17$ to $8.5 \times 5.5$ |

h. Exit paper weight

52 to $128 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (14 to 34.1 lbs )
i. Paper pass
center (same as main unit)
j. Exit area/finishing

| Upper exit tray (Job separator tray) | Face down |
| :--- | :--- |
| Lower exit tray (main machine exit tray) | Face down |

## k. Power supply

| Power supply | DC 24V (from main machine) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Power consumption | 5.6 W |

I. Method of movement
with original motor (not with main machine)
m. Machine weight
0.6 kg
n. Exit capacity

| Upper exit tray (Job separator) | 100 sheets |
| :--- | :--- |
| Lower exit tray (main machine exit tray) | 500 sheets $(*)$ |

* 400 sheets for B4, Legal, Foolscap, A3, and W letter.
o. Tray full detector

| Upper exit tray (Job separator) | Yes |
| :--- | :--- |
| Lower exit tray (main machine exit tray) | No |

## p. Concept of function

| Upper exit tray (Job separator) | FAX/Printer (This setting can be <br> done by users.) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Lower exit tray (main machine <br> exit tray) | Copy/Printer/FAX (This setting can <br> be done by users.) |

## q. Reliance

| MCBJ | 60 k |
| :--- | :--- |
| MCBF | 10 k |

r. Main color of cabinet

Frosty white
s. Setting
to be easy setting

## C. Optical (Image scanning) section

(1) Type

Flat-bed type/monochrome
(2) Document reference position

Rear left reference
(3) Resolution

|  | Main scanning direction | Sub scanning direction |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Scan | 400 dpi | 600 dpi |

## (4) Gradation

256 gradations (8-bit)
(5) Original size/Scanning area
a. Max. original size

A3 paper (11" $\times$ 17")
b. Scanning area

(6) Scanning speed
$122 \mathrm{~mm} / \mathrm{sec}$ ( 600 dpi : magnification ratio 100\%)

## (7) Light source (lamp)

| Type | Xenon |
| :--- | :--- |
| Drive voltage | 1.5 kV |

## (8) Read sensor

| Type | Reduction optical system image sensor (CCD) |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Monochrome |

D. Scanner (exposure) section
(1) Resolution

| Main scanning direction | Sub scanning direction |
| :---: | :---: |
| 600 dpi | 600 dpi |

## (2) Gradation

2 gradations
(3) Laser unit specifications

| r.p.m. | $28,800 \mathrm{rpm}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Mirror surfaces | 6 faces |
| Laser power | $0.4 \mathrm{~mW} / 600 \mathrm{dpi}, 0.2 \mathrm{~mW} / 1200 \mathrm{dpi}$ |
| Laser beam size | $60 \mu$ (Main scan) $\times 70 \mu$ (Sub scan) |
| Laser wave length | 785 nm |

## E. Image process section

| Imaging speed |  | 600 dpi : 122 mm/sec. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Photo <br> conductor | Type | OPC drum (dia. 30mm) |
|  | LIFE | 50,000 sheets |
|  | Type | Developer (Black) |
|  | LIFE | 33,000 sheets (Toner, life: 33k, Developer life: <br> $50 \mathrm{k})$ |
| Charge | System | $(-)$ DC scorotron (saw tooth) |
|  | Voltage | $560 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ constant electric current |
|  | System | Transfer roller |
|  | Voltage | $18 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ (electric current) |
| Exposure | Xenon lamp |  |
| Seveloping | Dry, 2-component magnetic brush <br> Sevelopment |  |
| Discharge | $(-)$ DC corotron |  |
| Cleaning | - |  |

## F. Fusing

| Type |  | Heat roller |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Lamp | Type | Halogen lamp |
|  | Voltage | 100 V |
|  | Power <br> consumption | 1000 W |
|  | $185^{\circ}(600 \mathrm{dpi})$ |  |
|  | $160^{\circ}(1200 \mathrm{dpi})$ |  |
| Heat roller | Teflon coated roller |  |
| Pressure roller | Silicone rubber roller with roentgerized <br> cube |  |
| Separation system | Natural separation (with pawl) |  |

## G. Drive

| Drive section | Motor |
| :--- | :--- |
| Main motor | DC brushless motor |

## 4. Safety and environmental protection standards

(1) Safety and environmental protection standards

| Item | Standard name | Country name |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Safety <br> standards | S mark | Japan |
| Radio wave <br> noise standard | CEMKO mark | EU |
| EnergyStar |  | EU |

(2) Ozone level

| Ozone | Less than $0.02 \mathrm{mg} / \mathrm{m}^{3}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Dust | Less than $0.075 \mathrm{mg} / \mathrm{m}^{3}$ |

(3) Noise level

| Operating | Less than 63dB |
| :--- | :--- |
| On standby | Less than 40dB |

## 5. Environment conditions

(1) Space required

| Folded multi manual feed | $623(\mathrm{~W}) \times 585.5(\mathrm{D}) \mathrm{mm}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Open multi manual feed | $889(\mathrm{~W}) \times 585.5(\mathrm{D}) \mathrm{mm}$ |

(2) Operating ambient conditions

(3) Ambient storage conditions

(4) Ambient conditions for transporting

(5) Atmospheric pressure

595 mmHg or above
(6) Standard temperature and humidity

| Temperature | 20 to $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Humidity | $65 \pm 5 \% \mathrm{RH}$ |


| No. | Item | Content |  | Life | Model name | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Toner CA (Black) with IC chip | Toner <br> (Toner; Net Weight 745g) <br> Polyethylene Bag | $\begin{array}{r} \hline \times 10 \\ \times 10 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $33 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270MT | * Life: A4 size at 6\% coverage $\mathrm{MT}=\mathrm{NT} * 10$ |
| 2 | Developer | Developer (Developer; Net Weight 400g) | $\times 10$ | $50 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270MD | MD=ND*10 |
| 3 | Drum | Drum | $\times 1$ | 50K | AR-270DR |  |
| 4 | Upper heat roller kit | Upper Heat Roller <br> Fusing gear <br> Upper heat roller bearing <br> Fusing separation pawl (upper) |  | 150K | AR-271UH |  |
| 5 | Lower heat roller kit | Lower Heat Roller Fusing separation pawl (lower) Fusing busing (lower) | $\begin{aligned} & \times 1 \\ & \times 4 \\ & \times 2 \end{aligned}$ | 300K | AR-271LH |  |
| 6 | 100K maintenance kit | Drum Separation Unit Transfer roller unit | $\begin{aligned} & \times 2 \\ & \times 1 \end{aligned}$ | 100K | AR-271KA1 |  |
| 7 | MC unit | MC unit | $\times 10$ | 50K (×10) | AR-270MC |  |
| 8 | Cleaner Blade | Cleaner Blade | $\times 10$ | 50K (×10) | AR-270CB |  |
| 9 | Drum frame unit | Drum frame unit | $\times 1$ | 200K | AR-270DU | * The life of the toner reception seat welded to the drum frame is 200 K , and it can be used up to 4 times. (Supplied as a drum frame unit.) <br> * Drum frame unit contains all the drum unit parts excluding Drum and Drum fixing plate. |
| 10 | Staple Cartridge | Staple Cartridge | $\times 3$ | $\begin{gathered} 3000 \text { staples } \\ \times 3 \end{gathered}$ | AR-SC1 |  |

* The other maintenance parts than the above are supplied as service parts.

| No. | Item | Content |  | Life | Model name | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Toner CA (Black) with IC chip | Toner <br> (Toner; Net Weight 745g) <br> Polyethylene Bag | $\begin{array}{r} \times 10 \\ \times 10 \end{array}$ | $33 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270ET | * Life: A4 size at 6\% coverage $\mathrm{ET}=\mathrm{FT} * 10$ |
| 2 | Developer | Developer (Developer; Net Weight 400g) | $\times 10$ | 50K (×10) | AR-270CD | $C D=S D * 10$ |
| 3 | Drum | Drum | $\times 1$ | 50K | AR-270DR |  |
| 4 | Upper heat roller kit | Upper Heat Roller <br> Fusing gear <br> Upper heat roller bearing <br> Fusing separation pawl (upper) |  | 150K | AR-271UHG |  |
| 5 | Lower heat roller kit | Lower Heat Roller <br> Fusing separation pawl (lower) <br> Fusing busing (lower) | $\begin{aligned} & \times 1 \\ & \times 4 \\ & \times 2 \end{aligned}$ | 300K | AR-271LH |  |
| 6 | 100K PM kit | Drum Separation Unit <br> Transfer roller unit <br> DV blade <br> Side seal F <br> Side seal R | $\begin{array}{r} \times 2 \\ \times 1 \\ \times 1 \\ \times 1 \\ \times 1 \\ \times 1 \\ \hline 1 \end{array}$ | 100K | AR-271KA |  |
| 7 | MC unit | MC unit | $\times 10$ | 50K (×10) | AR-270MC |  |
| 8 | Cleaner Blade | Cleaner Blade | $\times 10$ | 50K (×10) | AR-270CB |  |
| 9 | Drum frame unit | Drum frame unit | $\times 1$ | 200K | AR-270DU | * The life of the toner reception seat welded to the drum frame is 200 K , and it can be used up to 4 times. (Supplied as a drum frame unit.) <br> * Drum frame unit contains all the drum unit parts excluding Drum and Drum fixing plate. |

[^0]C. Asia affiliates/Asia agent/STCL/SRH/SRS/SRSSC/SBI

| No. | Item | Content |  | Life | Model name | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Toner CA (Black) with IC chip | Toner <br> (Toner; Net Weight 745g) <br> Polyethylene Bag | $\begin{array}{r} \times 10 \\ \times 10 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $33 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270CT | * Life: A4 size at 6\% coverage $\mathrm{CT}=\mathrm{ST}^{*} 10$ |
| 2 | Developer | Developer (Developer; Net Weight 400g) | $\times 10$ | $50 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270CD | $\mathrm{CD}=\mathrm{SD*}$ 10 |
| 3 | Drum | Drum | $\times 1$ | 50K | AR-270DR |  |
| 4 | Upper heat roller kit | Upper Heat Roller <br> Fusing gear <br> Upper heat roller bearing <br> Fusing separation pawl (upper) | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 2 \\ & \times 4 \\ & \times 4 \end{aligned}$ | 150K | AR-271UHG |  |
| 5 | Lower heat roller kit | Lower Heat Roller <br> Fusing separation pawl (lower) <br> Fusing busing (lower) | $\begin{aligned} & \times 1 \\ & \times 4 \\ & \times 2 \end{aligned}$ | 300K | AR-271LH |  |
| 6 | 100K PM kit | Drum Separation Unit <br> Transfer roller unit <br> DV blade <br> Side seal $F$ <br> Side seal R | $\begin{aligned} & \times 2 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \\ & \times 1 \end{aligned}$ | 100K | AR-271KA |  |
| 7 | MC unit | MC unit | $\times 10$ | 50K ( $\times 10$ ) | AR-270MC |  |
| 8 | Cleaner Blade | Cleaner Blade | $\times 10$ | $50 \mathrm{~K}(\times 10)$ | AR-270CB |  |
| 9 | Drum frame unit | Drum frame unit | $\times 1$ | 200K | AR-270DU | * The life of the toner reception seat welded to the drum frame is 200 K , and it can be used up to 4 times. (Supplied as a drum frame unit.) <br> * Drum frame unit contains all the drum unit parts excluding Drum and Drum fixing plate. |
| 10 | Staple Cartridge | Staple Cartridge | $\times 3$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 3000 \text { staples } \\ \times 3 \end{gathered}$ | AR-SC1 |  |

* The other maintenance parts than the above are supplied as service parts.


## 2. Production number identification

## <TD cartridge>

The label on the TD cartridge shows the date of production.


## <Drum>

The laser print indicates the date (year, month, day) of production.


[^1]
## 3. Environment conditions

## A. Ambient conditions for transporting


B. Ambient storage conditions (sealed)

C. Operating ambient conditions


## 4. Life (packed conditions)

Photoconductor drum (36 months from the production month) Developer, toner ( 24 months from the production month)

## [5] UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION

## 1. Removal of protective material and fixing screw

1) Remove all tapes, then open the document cover and remove the protective material of sheet shape.
2) Remove the fixing screw using a coin.

The fixing screw is required when transporting the machine. Keep it in the tray. (Refer to the later description.)


## 2. Removal and storage of fixing pin

1) Lift the knob and gently pull out the tray.

2) Hold the paper pressure plate and turn the fixing pin in the arrow direction.

3) Store the removed fixing pin and the fixing screw which was removed in the above procedure, together in the specified storage place in the tray.



* If power is turned don without removing the fixing pin, it will be difficult to pull out the tray.


## 3. Developer cartridge installation

1) Hold the both sides of the front cover, and pull down to open it.

2) Loosen the screw and remove the developer cartridge.

3) Remove the developer tank from the developer cartridge.

4) Supply developer into the developer tank while rotating the MG roller.


* Shake the developer bag enough before opening it.
* Check to insure that the hook is engaged in two positions.

5) Attach the developer tank to the developer cartridge. After supplying developer into the developer cartridge, do not tilt or shake the developer cartridge.
6) Attach the developer cartridge to the copier, and fix it with the screw.

Note: When replacing the OPC drum with a new one, be sure to clear the drum count.

## 4. Toner cartridge installation

1) Shake the toner cartridge several times horizontally, and remove the tape.


* Do not hold the shutter lever when shaking.

2) Press the lock release lever, and insert the unit completely into the copier along the guide groove. Then fix the blue screw and the locking screw.


* Dirt or dust must be removed from the toner cartridge before installing.

3) Take off the tape, and remove the shutter from the toner cartridge.


## 5. Toner concentration sensor level adjustment

1) Open the cover.
2) Power ON (The mechanism cannot be initialized because the cover is open.)
3) Install the developing unit with new developer in it.
4) Enter SIM 25-2.
5) Close the cover immediately before starting the operation.
6) Press the OK key to start.

After completion of the adjustment, be sure to cancel the simulation.
Note: When replacing developer with new one, be sure to clear the developer counter.

## 6. Paper size selection for paper feed tray

1) The paper feed trays have no paper size detection mechanism and the paper size can be selected by entry from the operation panel. The bypass tray has a paper size detection mechanism and the paper size cannot be selected from the operation panel.
2) To select the paper size from the operation panel, press the Special Function key and choose "Paper Size Enter" from the function menu to open the paper size enter screen.

- Screen display

| SFECIAL FINCTION |
| :--- |
| SFECIAL MIDES |
| ORIG. SIZE ENTER |
| PAFER SIZE SET |
| -IISPLAY CONTRAST |

3) On the screen, all trays are indicated and the previously selected tray is highlighted. Use the Up/Down key to select the tray desired.

- Screen display

| PaPER SIZE SET |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $8 \times 14$ |
| [2] $11 \times 17$ | $8 \times 11$ |
| 1381811 F | $8 \times 11 \mathrm{~F}$ |
| F14 51488 | $5 \times \times 8 \times$ |

4) After selecting the tray, press the Right cursor key to move to the paper size selection box on the right side of the screen (the highlighted size is the previously selected size). Use the Up/Down key to select the desired paper size.

5) After selecting the paper size, press the Left cursor key to return to the left side of the screen. At that time, the selected tray indicates the paper size selected above.

| PAPER SIZE SET |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\operatorname{Al\|l}_{11} 8 \times 11$ | $8 \times 14$ |
| [2] $11 \times 17$ | $8 \times 11$ |
| 13) $5 \times 8 \times 1{ }^{\text {a }}$ | 8* $\times 11 \mathrm{R}$ |
| F14 $5 \times 8 \times 81$ | $51 \times 81$ |

Press the OK key to confirm the setting. The following message appears:

- Message (M081)

| Adjust paper tray |
| ---: |
| suides. |
| $\left[\begin{array}{r}\text { [0k] }] \\ \hline\end{array}\right.$ |

6) After the Start key is pressed, if the fed paper is different in size from the setting, the machine makes copy and then stops running with the mode retained. The following message appears for six seconds. the Start LED is ON): The tray set EXTRA size is not available for this specification.

- Message (C449)


7) If any of Trays 2 to 4 is selected, the paper sizes of $A 5 / 5.5 \times 8.5$ are not available (because the A5/5.5 x 8.5-sized paper cannot be fed from these trays).

## [6] EXTERNAL VIEW AND INTERNAL STRUCTURE

## 1. External view



| No. Name | Function/Operation |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Platen cover | Place the original on the original table and close the platen cover before copying starts. |
| 2 | Paper output tray | Finished copies are deposited in the paper output tray. |
| 3 | Front cover | Open to remove misfeeds and for copier servicing. |
| 4 | Paper trays | Each tray holds 500 sheets of copy paper. |
| 5 | Power switch | Press to turn copier power on and off. |
| 6 | Handles | Use to move the copier. |
| 7 | Operation panel | All copier controls are located here for easy operation. |
| 8 | Original table | Place the document to be copied here. |
| 9 | Upper exit area cover | Open to remove misfeeds when an optional job separator tray kit or finisher is installed. |
| 10 | Side cover | Open to remove misfeeds. |
| 11 | Side cover handle | Lift and pull to open the side cover. |
| 12 | Bypass tray guides | Adjust to the width of the copy paper. |
| 13 | Bypass tray | Special papers (including transparency film) and copy paper can be fed from the bypass tray. |
| 14 | Bypass tray extension | Pull out when feeding large paper such as 8-1/2" x 14" and 11" x 17". |

## 2. Internal



| No. | Name |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Toner cartridge lock release lever | Use to unlock the toner cartridge. |
| 2 | Toner cartridge | Contains toner. |
| 3 | Paper guide | Open to remove misfed paper. |
| 4 | Fusing unit release levers | Lower to remove misfed paper. |
| 5 | Photoconductor drum | A drum on which photoconductor is coated. Images are formed on this photoconductor drum. |
| 6 | Roller rotating knob | Turn to remove misfed paper. |

## 3. Operation panel

## A. Key position



## B. LCD panel

## (Basic screen)



| No. | Name | Function/Operation |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Exposure display | Indicates the selected exposure mode. |
| 2 | Message display | Messages are displayed regarding <br> copier status and operation. |
| 3 | Original size display | The original paper size is displayed. |
| 4 | Copy ratio display | Displays the copy ratios for reductions <br> or enlargements. |
| 5 | Paper size display | Displays the selected paper size. <br> When "AUTO" is displayed, paper size <br> matching the original and copy ratio <br> will be automatically selected. |
| 6 | Paper tray display | The selected paper feed location is <br> highlighted. |

## 4. Motor, Solenoid, Clutch



| No. | Name | Code | Function and operation |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Mirror motor | MIRM | Optical mirror base drive |
| 2 | Shifter motor | SFTM | Shifter drive |
| 3 | Duplex motor | DPXM | Duplex paper switching <br> and exit roller |
| 4 | Cooling fan | MFAN | Cools the inside of the <br> unit. |
| 5 | Main motor | Main drive |  |
| 6 | PS clutch | PSRSOL | Main unit paper feed |
| 7 | Manual paper feed <br> solenoid | Manual paper feed <br> solenoid |  |
| 8 | Manual paper feed <br> clutch | HPSOL | Manual paper feed <br> clutch |
| 9 | Paper feed transfer <br> llutch | Paper feed transfer <br> clutch |  |
| 10 | Paper feed clutch | PCL1H | Paper feed roller drive |
| 11 | Cassette lift-up motor | LUM1H | Cassette paper lift-up |
| 12 | Paper feed solenoid | PCS1H | Solenoid for the paper <br> feed from the cassette |
| 13 | 2nd cassette paper <br> feed solenoid | TM | Toner supply |
| 14 | Toner motor | PREMS | Separation pawl <br> operation solenoid <br> OL |
| 15 | Separation pawl <br> solenoid | PSFAN | Cools the inside of the <br> unit. |
| 16 | Exhaust fan motor |  |  |
| 17 | Intake fan motor |  |  |

## 5. Sensor



| No. | Name | Code | Function and operation |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Original size sensor | DSIN0 | Document size detection |
| 2 | Mirror home position sensor | MHPS | Mirror (scanner) home position detection |
| 3 | Document cover sensor | OCCOVER | Document cover open/close detection |
| 4 | Document size sensor | DSIN3 | Document size detection |
| 5 | 1st paper exit sensor | POUT | 1st paper exit detection |
| 6 | Shifter home position sensor | SFTHP | Shifter home position sensor detection |
| 7 | Paper exit sensor (DUP side) | PDPX | Paper exit detection |
| 8 | Thermistor | RTHIN | Fusing temperature detection |
| 9 | Thermostat |  | Abnormal high temperature detection in the fusing section |
| 10 | Manual feed paper entry sensor | HPIN | Sensor of paper entry from the manual paper feed tray, the 2nd/multi-stage desk, or the DUP |
| 11 | 1st cassette (paper tray) detection | CSS1 | 1st cassette (paper tray) empty detection |
| 12 | Manual feed paper empty sensor | HPEMPTY | Manual feed paper empty detection |
| 13 | 2nd cassette (paper tray) detection | CSS1A | 2nd cassette (paper tray) empty detection |
| 14 | Manual feed width detection volume | HPWS | Manual feed paper width detection |
| 15 | Manual paper feed tray empty sensor 2 | HPTRAY2 | Manual feed tray position detection |
| 16 | Manual paper feed tray empty sensor 1 | HPTRAY1 | Manual feed tray position detection |
| 17 | Manual feed length detection sensor 2 | HPSIZE2 | Manual feed paper length detection |
| 18 | Manual feed length detection sensor 1 | HPSIZE1 | Manual feed paper length detection |


| No. | Name | Code | Function and <br> operation |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 19 | Door switch | SW24V | Front door and side <br> door open/close <br> detection |
| 20 | 2nd right door switch | DRS1A | Side door open/close <br> detection |
| 21 | 2nd cassette paper <br> pass sensor | PPD1A | 2nd cassette paper <br> pass |
| 22 | 2nd cassette paper <br> upper limit detection <br> sensor | LUD1A | 2nd cassette paper <br> upper limit detection |
| 23 | 2nd cassette paper <br> empty sensor | PAP1A | 2nd cassette paper <br> empty detection |
| 24 | 1st cassette paper <br> upper limit detection <br> sensor | LUD1H | 1st cassette paper <br> upper limit detection |
| 25 | 1st cassette paper <br> empty sensor | PAP1H | 1st cassette paper <br> empty detection |
| 26 | Center tray paper <br> YES/NO sensor | TRAYPAPER | Center tray paper <br> YES/NO detection |
| 27 | 1st cassette paper <br> pass sensor | PIN | 1st cassette paper <br> pass |

## 6. PWB unit



| No. | Name | Function and operation |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Inverter PWB | Copy lamp control |
| 2 | CCD PWB | For image scanning (read) |
| 3 | Option connector PWB |  |
| 4 | MCU PWB | Main unit control |
| 5 | Tray interface PWB | 2nd tray control |
| 6 | KEY/LED PWB (right side) | For the copy operation |
| 7 | LCD back light PWB | LCD control |
| 8 | KEY/LED PWB (left side) | For the FAX operation |
| 9 | Power source PWB | AC power input/DC voltage <br> control |

## 7. Section



| No. | Name | Function and operation |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Copy lamp | Image radiation lamp |
| 2 | Copy lamp unit | Operates in synchronization with 2nd/3rd mirror unit to radiate documents sequentially. |
| 3 | LSU unit | Converts image signals into laser beams to write on the dum. |
| 4 | Lens unit | Reads images with the lens and the CCD. |
| 5 | MC holder unit | Supplies negative charges evenly on the drum. |
| 6 | Paper exit roller | Paper exit roller |
| 7 | Transport roller | Paper transport roller |
| 8 | Upper heat roller | Fuses toner on paper. (with the teflon roller) |
| 9 | Lower heat roller | Fuses toner on paper. (with the silicone rubber roller) |
| 10 | Drum unit | Forms images. |
| 11 | DUP transport follower roller | Duplex paper transport |
| 12 | DUP transport roller | Duplex paper transport |
| 13 | Transport roller | Transfer images on the drum onto paper. |
| 14 | Resist roller | Synchronize the paper lead edge with the image lead edge. |
| 15 | Manual feed tray | Manual feed paper tray |
| 16 | Manual paper feed roller | Picks up papers in manual paper feed port. |
| 17 | Manual feed transport roller | Transports paper from the manual paper feed port. |
| 18 | 1st cassette pick-up roller | Picks up paper from the cassette. |
| 19 | 1st cassette paper feed roller | Transports the picked up paper to RESIST section. |
| 20 | 2nd cassette pick-up roller | Picks up paper from the cassette. |
| 21 | 2nd cassette paper feed roller | Transports the picked up paper to RESIST section. |
| 22 | MG roller | Puts toner on the OPC drum. |
| 23 | 2nd/3rd mirror unit | Reflects the images from the copy lamp unit to the lens unit. |

## [7] ADJUSTMENTS, SETTING

## 1. List of adjustment items

| Section |  | Adjustment item |  | Adjustment procedure/SIM No. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | Process section | (1) | Developing doctor gap adjustment |  | Developing doctor gap adjustment |
|  |  | (2) | MG roller main pole position adjustment |  | MG roller main pole position adjustment |
|  |  | (3) | Developing bias voltage adjustment |  | SIM8-1 |
|  |  | (4) | Grid bias voltage adjustment (High mode) |  | SIM8-2 |
|  |  | (5) | Grid bias voltage adjustment (Low mode) |  | SIM8-3 |
| B | Mechanism section | (1) | OC image lead edge position/Sub scanning magnification ratio/Original offset auto adjustment |  | SIM48-3 |
|  |  | (2) | Print start position adjustment |  | SIM50-5 |
|  |  | (3) | SPF image lead edge position adjustment |  | SIM50-6 |
|  |  | (4) | Rear edge void adjustment |  | SIM50-1-6 |
|  |  | (5) | Paper off center adjustment |  | SIM50-10 |
|  |  | (6) | Left edge void area adjustment |  | SIM50-1-8 |
|  |  | (7) | Main scanning direction (FR direction) distortion balance adjustment |  | No. $2 / 3$ mirror base unit installing position adjustment |
|  |  |  |  |  | Copy lamp unit installing position adjustment |
|  |  | (8) | Sub scanning direction (scanning direction) distortion adjustment |  | Winding pulley position adjustment |
|  |  | (9) | Main scanning direction (FR direction) distortion adjustment |  | Rail height adjustment |
|  |  | (10) | Main scanning direction (FR direction) magnification ratio adjustment |  | SIM48-1-1, 48-1-2 |
|  |  | (11) | Sub scanning direction (scanning direction) | a | OC mode in copying (SIM 48-1-3) |
|  |  |  | magnification ratio adjustment | b | RSPF sub scanning direction magnification ratio (SIM48-1-4, 48-1-5) |
|  |  | (12) | Off center adjustment (SPF mode) |  | SIM50-12 |
|  |  | (13) | OC (SPF) open/close detection position adjustment |  | SIM41-3 |
|  |  | (14) | Original sensor adjustment |  | SIM41-2, 41-4 |
|  |  | (15) | SPF white correction pixel position adjustment (required in an SPF model when replacing the lens unit) |  | SIM63-7 |
|  |  | (16) | SPF scan position auto adjustment |  | SIM53-8, SIM46-20, SIM50-6 |
| C | Image density (exposure) adjustment | (1) | Copy mode |  | SIM46-2 |

## 2. Copier adjustment

## A. Process section

(1) Developing doctor gap adjustment

1) Loosen the developing doctor fixing screw $A$.
2) Insert a thickness gauge of 1.5 mm to the three positions at 20 mm and 150 mm from the both ends of the developing doctor as shown.

3) Tighten the developing doctor fixing screw.
4) Check the clearance of the developing doctor. If it is within the specified range, then fix the doctor fixing screw with screw lock.

* When inserting a thickness gauge, be careful not to scratch the developing doctor and the MG roller.


## <Adjustment specification>

Developing doctor gap
F/R both ends ( 20 mm from the both ends): $1.5_{-0.15 \mathrm{~mm}}^{+0.1 \mathrm{~mm}}$
C (Center)( 150 mm from the both ends): $\quad 1.55_{-0.2 \mathrm{~mm}}^{+0.15 \mathrm{~mm}}$
(2) MG roller main pole position adjustment

1) Put the developing unit on a flat surface.
2) Tie a needle or pin on a string.
3) Hold the string and bring the needle close to the MG roller horizontally. (Do not use paper clip, which is too heavy to make a correct adjustment.) (Put the developing unit horizontally for this adjustment.)
4) Do not bring the needle into contact with the MG roller, but bring it to a position 2 or 3 mm apart from the MG roller. Mark the point on the MG roller which is on the extension line from the needle tip.
5) Measure the distance from the marking position to the top of the doctor plate of the developing unit to insure that it is 18 mm .
If the distance is not within the specified range, loosen the fixing screw A of the main pole adjustment plate, and move the adjustment plate in the arrow direction to adjust.

(3) Developing bias voltage adjustment (SIM 8-1)
6) Execute SIM 8-1.

| Sim8-1 DV BIAS $\cdot$ COPY |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :---: |
| $1:$ AE | 400 |  |
| $2:$ TEXT | 450 |  |
| $3:$ TEXT $/$ PHOTO | 450 |  |
| $1 / 2$ |  |  |

2) After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key.
3) Output will be made for 30 sec .
<Adjustment specification>

| Display items | Content | Installation range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1: AE | AE | 200-550 | 400 (-400V) |
| 2:TEXT | Character |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 3:TEXT/PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 4: РНОТО | Photo |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| 6:TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | 376 (-376V) |

(4) Grid bias voltage adjustment (High mode) (SIM 8-2)

1) Execute SIM 8-2.

2) After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key.
3) Output will be made for 30 sec .
<Adjustment specification>

| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE | AE | 1-8 | 3 (-530V) |
| 2:TEXT | Character |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 3:TEXT/PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 4: РНОТО | Photo |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| 6:TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | 2 (-505V) |

* The input value is in the increment of -25 V .
(5) Grid bias voltage adjustment (Low mode) (SIM 8-3)

1) Execute SIM 8-3.

2) After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key.
3) Output will be made for 30 sec .

## <Adjustment specification>

| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ AE | AE |  | $1-8$ |
|  | $3(-400)$ |  |  |
| $2:$ TEXT | Character |  | $5(-450)$ |
| $3:$ TEXT/ PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | $5(-450)$ |
| $4:$ PHOTO | Photo |  | $5(-450)$ |
| $5:$ SUPER PHOTO | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| $6:$ TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | $2(-375)$ |

* The input value is in the increment of -25 V .


## B. Mechanism section

## (1) OC image lead edge position/Sub scanning

 magnification ratio/Original offset auto adjustmentWhen executing the sub scan magnification ratio automatic adjustment (SIM 48-3), keep the side cover open.

1) Set the test chart (UKOG-0011QSZZ) on the OC table.
2) Execute SIM 48-3.

3) Make a copy.
(2) Print start position adjustment
4) Execute SIM 50-5.

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
Pressing the [START] key makes a print.
Pressing the [RETURN] key returns to the mode selection.


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ TRAY1 | 1st cassette | $0-99$ | 53 |
| $2:$ OPTION | Option cassette | $1-99$ |  |
| $3:$ MANUAL | Manual feed |  |  |
| $4:$ DUPLEX | Back print |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
2) Measure the distance $H$ between the paper lead edge and the image print start position. Set the image print start position set value again.

- 1 step of the set value corresponds to about 0.127 mm shift.
- Calculate the set value from the formula below.
$99-\mathrm{H} / 0.127(\mathrm{~mm})=$ Image print start position set value $<\mathrm{H}$ : Print start position measurement value (mm)>

* Fit the print edge with the paper edge, and perform the lead edge adjustment.
Example: $99-5 / 0.127=99-39.4=$ about 59
Note: If the set value is not obtained from the above formula, perform the fine adjustment.

3) Execute SIM 50-1-2 to adjust the main cassette lead edge void.

- 1 step of the set value corresponds to about 0.127 mm shift.
- Calculate the set value from the formula below.
$B / 0.127(\mathrm{~mm})=$ Lead edge void adjustment value $<B$ : Lead edge void (mm)>


Example: When setting the lead edge void to 2.5 mm : $2.5 / 0.127=$ about 20
<Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | SIM | Set value | Spec value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Main cassette <br> lead edge void | $50-1-$ <br> 2 | B/0.127 | Lead edge void: <br> 1 to 4mm <br> Image loss: 3 mm | $1-99$ |
| Print start <br> position | $50-5$ | $99-\mathrm{H} / 0.127$ | or less |  |

(3) SPF image lead edge position adjustment

1) Set a scale on the $O C$ table as shown below.


Note: Since the printed copy is used as a test chart, put the scale in paralleled with the edge lines.
2) Make a copy, then use the copy output as an original to make an SPF copy again.
3) Check the copy output. If necessary, perform the following adjustment procedures.
4) Execute SIM 50-6.
5) Set the SPF lead edge position set value so that the same image is obtained as that obtained in the previous OC image lead edge position adjustment.
<Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | SIM | Set value | Spec value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SPF image <br> lead edge <br> position | $50-6$ | 1 step: <br> 0.127 mm <br> shift | Lead edge void: <br> $1-4 \mathrm{~mm}$ <br> Image loss: 3 mm or less | $1-99$ |

(4) Rear edge void adjustment

1) Set a scale as shown in the figure below.

2) Set the document size to $A 4$ ( 8.5 " $\times 11^{\prime \prime}$ ), and make a copy at $100 \%$.
3) If an adjustment is required, follow the procedures below.

4) Execute SIM 50-1 and set the density mode to DEN-B. The currently set adjustment value is displayed.
5) Enter the set value and press the start key.

The correction value is stored and a copy is made.
<Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | SIM | Set value | Spec <br> value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Rear edge <br> void | $50-1-6$ | 1 step: 0.127 mm <br> shift | 4 mm or <br> less | $1-99$ |

(5) Paper off center adjustment

1) Perform this adjustment after execution of SIM 48-3.
2) Set a test chart (UKOG-0089CSZZ) on the document table.
3) Select a paper feed port and make a copy.

Compare the copy and the test chart. If necessary, perform the following adjustment procedure.
4) Execute SIM 50-10.

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
Pressing the [START] key makes a print.
Pressing the [RETURN] key returns to the mode selection.

(Input screen)

(Executing screen)


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ BYPASS | Manual feed | $1-99$ | 50 |
| $2:$ TRAY1 | 1st cassette |  |  |
| $3:$ TRAY2 | 2nd cassette |  |  |
| $4:$ TRAY3 | 3rd cassette |  |  |
| $5:$ TRAY4 | 4th cassette |  |  |
| $6:$ DUPLEX | Back print |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode. <Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | SIM | Set value | Spec value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Paper off <br> center | $50-10$ <br> -2 | Add 1: 0.127mm <br> shift to R side. <br> Reduce 1: | Single: <br> Center <br> $\pm 2.0 \mathrm{~mm}$ | $1-99$ |
| Second <br> print surface <br> off-center$50-10$ <br> -6 | 0.127 mm shift to L <br> side. | Duplex: <br> Center <br> $\pm 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ |  |  |

## (6) Left edge void area adjustment

Note: Before performing this adjustment, be sure to check that the paper off center adjustment (SIM 50-10) is completed.

1) Set a test chart (UKOG-0089CSZZ) on the document table.
2) Select a paper feed port and make two copies.

Compare the second copy and the test chart. If necessary, perform the following adjustment procedure.

* The first copy does not show the void. Be sure to check the second copy.

3) Execute SIM 50-1.

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
Pressing the [START] key makes a print.
Pressing the [RETURN] key returns to the mode selection.


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1: RRC-A | Original scan start position adjustment | $1-99$ | 43 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| 2: RRC-B | RRC cancel adjustment (Main cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Main cassette is specified. |
| $3:$ RRC-MANUAL | RRC cancel adjustment (Manual feed cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Manual feed cassette is specified. |
| $4:$ RRC-OPTION | RRC cancel adjustment (Option cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: 2nd cassette is specified. |
| $5:$ RRC-DUPLEX | RRC cancel adjustment (back of the machine) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| $6:$ DEN-B | Rear edge void adjustment | $1-99$ | 30 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| $7:$ DEN-B-DUP | Rear edge void adjustment (Duplex) | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| 8: SIDE VOID | Left edge void adjustment (First print surface) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| $9:$ SIDE VOID-DUP | Left edge void adjustment (Duplex) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |
| $10:$ LOSS (OC) | Image loss quantity adjustment | $1-5$ | 3 | Tray selection: Made by user. |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
<Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | SIM | Set value | Spec <br> value | Setting <br> range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Left edge void | $50-1-8$ | 1 step: 0.127 mm shift | $0.5-4 \mathrm{~mm}$ | $1-99$ |

(7) Main scanning direction (FR direction) distortion balance adjustment

1) Remove the OC glass and the right cabinet.

2) Loosen the copy lamp unit wire fixing screw.

3) Manually turn the mirror base drive pulley and bring No. $2 / 3$ mirror base unit into contact with the positioning plate.
At that time, if the front frame side and the rear frame side of No. $2 /$ 3 mirror base unit are brought into contact with the positioning plate at the same time, the mirror base unit parallelism is proper.
If one of them is in contact with the positioning plate, perform the adjustment of 4 ).

4) Loosen the set screw of the scanner drive pulley which is not in contact with No. 2/3 mirror base unit positioning plate.
5) Without moving the scanner drive pulley shaft, manually turn the scanner drive pulley until the positioning plate is brought into contact with No. 2/3 mirror base unit, then fix the scanner drive pulley.

6) Put No. $2 / 3$ mirror base unit on the positioning plate again, push the projections on the front frame side and the rear frame side of the copy lamp unit to the corner frame, and tighten the wire fixing screw.

(8) Sub scanning direction (scanning direction) distortion adjustment (Winding pulley position adjustment)
This adjustment must be performed in the following cases:

- When the mirror base drive wire is replaced.
- When the lamp unit, or No. 2/3 mirror holder is replaced.
- When a copy as shown is made.

Original

Copy

1) Set $A 3$ (11" $x$ 17") white paper on the original table as shown below.

2) Open the original cover and make a normal (100\%) copy.
3) Measure the width of the black background at the lead edge and at the rear edge.


La: Lead edge black background width
Lb: Rear edge black background width
If the width (La) of the black background at the lead edge is equal that (Lb) at the rear edge, there is no need to execute the following procedures of 4) -7 ).
4) Loosen the mirror base drive pulley fixing screw on the front frame side or on the rear frame side.

- When La < Lb

Turn the mirror base drive pulley on the front frame side in the arrow direction A. (Do not move the mirror base drive pulley shaft.)

- When La > Lb

Turn the mirror base drive pulley on the rear frame side in the arrow direction A. (Do not move the mirror base drive pulley shaft.)

5) Tighten the fixing screw of the mirror base drive pulley.

## <Adjustment specification>

$\mathrm{La}=\mathrm{Lb}$
6) Execute the main scanning direction (FR) distortion balance adjustment previously described in 2) again
(9) Main scanning direction (FR direction) distortion balance adjustment (Rail height adjustment)
When there is no skew copy in the mirror base scanning direction and there is no horizontal error (right angle to the scanning direction), the adjustment can be made by adjusting the No. $2 / 3$ mirror base unit rail height.
Before performing this adjustment, be sure to perform the horizontal image distortion adjustment in the laser scanner section.
This adjustment must be performed in the following cases:

- When the mirror base wire is replaced.
- When the copy lamp unit and no. $2 / 3$ mirror unit are replaced.
- When the mirror unit rail is replaced and moved.
- When a following copy is made.


1) Make an original for the adjustment.

Make test sheet by drawing parallel lines at 10 mm from the both ends of A3 (11" x 17") white paper as shown below. (These lines must be correctly parallel to each other.)

2) Make a normal (100\%) copy of the test sheet on A3 (11" $\times 17$ ") paper. (Fit the paper edge and the glass holding plate edge.)
3) Measure the distances (La, Lb, Lc, Ld) at the four corners as shown below.


When $L a=L b$ and $L c=L d$, no need to perform the procedures 4) and 5).
4) Move the mirror base $B$ rail position up and down (in the arrow direction) to adjust.


- When La > Lb

Shift the mirror base B rail upward by the half of the difference of La-Lb.

- When La < Lb

Shift the mirror base B rail downward by the half of the difference of Lb-La.
Example: When $\mathrm{La}=12 \mathrm{~mm}$ and $\mathrm{Lb}=9 \mathrm{~mm}$, shift the mirror base $B$ rail upward by 1.5 mm .

- When Lc >Ld

Shift the mirror base B rail downward by the half of the difference of Lc-Ld.

- When Lc < Ld

When $L c<L d$, move the mirror base $B$ on the paper feed side upward.

* When moving the mirror base rail, hold the mirror base rail with your hand.
<Adjustment specification>
$\mathrm{La}=\mathrm{Lb}, \mathrm{Lc}=\mathrm{Ld}$

5) After completion of adjustment, manually turn the mirror base drive pulley, scan the mirror base A and mirror base B fully, and check that the mirror bases are not in contact with each other.

* If the mirror base rail is moved extremely, the mirror base may be in contact with the frame or the original glass. Be careful to avoid this.


## (10) Main scanning direction (FR direction) magnification

 ratio adjustment (SIM 48-1)Note: Before performing this adjustment, be sure to check that the CCD unit is properly installed.

1) Put a scale on the original table as shown below.

2) Execute SIM 48-1.
3) After warm-up, shading is performed and the current set value of the main scanning direction magnification ratio is displayed on the display section in 2 digits.
4) Select the mode and press the start key again.
5) Auto correction mode (SIM48-1-1)

The mirror unit moves to the shading position, and the reference width of the reference white plate is scanned, and the correction value is automatically calculated from that scanned value.
The correction value is displayed and a copy is made.
6) Compare the scale image and the actual scale.

If a fine adjustment is required, switch to the manual correction mode with the magnification ratio display key and perform fine adjustment.
7) Manual correction mode (SIM48-1-2)

Enter the set value and press the start key.
The correction value is stored and a copy is made.

## <Adjustment specification>

Note: A judgement must be made with 200 mm width, and must not be made with 100 mm width.

$\left.$| Adjustment <br> mode | Spec value | SIM | Set value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| Main scanning <br> direction <br> magnification <br> ratio | At normal: <br> $\pm 1.0 \%$ | 48 -1 | Add 1: 0.1\% <br> increase | $1-99$ |
| Reduce 1: $0.1 \%$ |  |  |  |  |
| decrease |  |  |  |  |$\quad \right\rvert\,$

- Error in the auto correction mode

| Display | Content | Major cause |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Copy quantity <br> display "--" | The correction <br> value <br> calculated is <br> over 5\%. | - Improper position of reference <br> width line of the reference white <br> plate |
| - Improper installation of CCD unit |  |  |$|$| Paper jam |
| :--- | :--- |
| lamp ON |$\quad$| Reference line |
| :--- |
| scanning error | - Defective CCD | - No reference white plate |
| :--- |

(11) Sub scanning direction (scanning direction) magnification ratio adjustment (SIM 48-1-3)

## a. OC mode in copying

Note: Execute the procedure after completion of SIM 48-1-3.

1) Put a scale on the original table as shown below, and make a normal (100\%) copy.

2) Compare the scale image and the actual scale. If necessary, perform the following adjustment procedures.
3) Execute SIM 48-1-3.
4) Enter the set value and press the start key.

The set value is stored and a copy is made.

## <Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | Spec value | SIM | Set value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| Sub scanning <br> direction <br> magnification <br> ratio (OC mode) | At normal:  <br> $\pm 1.0 \%$ $48-1-$ <br> Add 1: $1-99$ |  | Reduce 1: <br> Rede increase |  |

## b. RSPF sub scanning direction magnification ratio

Note: Before performing this adjustment, be sure to check that the CCD unit is properly installed and that OC mode adjustment in copying has been completed.

1) Put a scale on the original table as shown below, and make a normal (100\%) copy to make a test chart.


Note: Since the printed copy is used as a test chart, put the scale in paralled with the edge lines.
2) Set the test chart on the SPF and make a normal (100\%) copy.
3) Compare the scale image and the actual image. If necessary, perform the following adjustment procedures.
4) Execute SIM 48-1-4.
5) After warm-up, shading is performed.

The current front surface sub scanning direction magnification ratio correction value is displayed in two digits on the display section.
6) Enter the set value and press the start key. The set value is stored and a copy is made.
7) Execute SIM 48-1-5.

The current back surface sub scanning direction magnification ratio is displayed in two digits on the display section.
8) Enter the set value and press the start key. The set value is stored and a copy is made.

## <Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | Spec value | SIM | Set value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Sub scanning | At normal: | $48-1-4$ | Add 1: | $1-99$ |
| direction | $\pm 1.0 \%$ | $48-1-5$ | $0.05 \%$ increase <br> magnification <br> ratio (SPF mode) |  |

## (12) Off center adjustment (SPF mode)

Note: Before performing this adjustment, be sure to check that the paper off center is properly adjusted.

1) Place the center position adjustment test chart (sheet with a straight line in the scan direction at the center) on the SPF.
2) Make a normal copy from the manual paper feed tray, and check the printed copy with the test chart.
If any adjustment is required, perform the following procedure.
3) Execute SIM 50-12.
4) After warm-up, shading is performed and the current set value of the off center adjustment is displayed on the display section in 2 digits.
5) Enter the set value and press the start key. The set value is stored and a copy is made.

## <Adjustment specification>

| Adjustment <br> mode | Spec value | SIM | Set value | Setting <br> range |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| Original off <br> center mode <br> (SPF mode) | Single: Center <br> $\pm 3.0 \mathrm{~mm}$ | $50-12$ | Add 1: 0.1mm <br> shift to R side | $1-99$ |
|  | Duplex: Center <br> $\pm 3.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ | Reduce 1:0.1mm <br> shift to L side |  |  |

(13) OC (SPF) open/close detection position adjustment

1) Execute SIM 41-3.
2) Gradually close the OC (SPF) from the full open position, and measure distance A when the display on the operation panel changes. (See the figure below.)


Distance $A=$ Table glass top - OC (SPF) handle rib


## <Adjustment specification>

OC (SPF) open/close position A: 125-225mm
3) If the distance is outside the specified range, adjust the open/close sensor attachment plate position as shown below.

- Distance < 125 mm : Shift toward A.
- Distance $>225 \mathrm{~mm}$ : Shift toward B.

(14) Original sensor adjustment (SIM 41-2, 41-4)

1) Set $A 3$ ( 11 " $\times 17$ ") paper on the $O C$ table. (Keep the SPF (OC cover) open.)
2) Execute SIM 41-2.
3) Keep $A=125 \mathrm{~mm}$, and execute SIM 41-4. (Do not put paper on the table.)
4) Check the reaction with SIM 41-1.
(15) SPF white correction pixel position adjustment (required in an SPF model when replacing the lens unit) (SIM63-7)
5) Fully open the SPF.
6) Execute SIM 63-7.
7) When the operation panel displays "COMPLETE," the adjustment is completed.
8) If the operation panel displays "ERROR," perform the following measures.

- When the display is 0 :

Check that the SPF is open.
Check that the lamp is ON. (If the lamp is OFF, check the MCU connector.)
Check that the CCD harness is properly inserted into the MCU connector.

- When the display is 281 or above:

1) Remove the table glass.
2) Remove the dark box.
3) Slide the lens unit toward the front side and attach it, then execute SIM.

- When the display is 143 or below:

1) Remove the table glass.
2) Remove the dark box.
3) Slide the lens unit toward the rear side and attach it, then execute SIM.


* When the lens unit is moved, execute the OC main scanning magnification ratio auto adjustment, SIM 48-1-1, SIM48-3 and the SPF original off-center adjustment.
* This adjustment is basically O.K. with SIM 63-7.


## (16) SPF scan position auto adjustment

## [Function]

Used to adjust the SPF scan position automatically.

## [Operation]

1) With the SPF or the OC cover open, place a chart of black background on the OC glass. (In the SPF standard model, the SPF glass surface is included.)

* Use a black chart (UKOG-0011QSZZ) or prepare a chart as shown below.
Chart size: $310 \times 470$, prepared with cutting sheet No. 791 (Black) or an equivalent one.

Reason: To prevent erroneous detection by disturbing light of a fluorescent lamp, etc.
2) Enter SIM53-08, and press [START] button.

Outline of SIM: The optical unit is shifted to recognize the boundary between the OC glass and the SPF glass cover.
With the same position as the reference, the SPF scan position is automatically adjusted.
<Note>

- After completion of the SPF scan position auto adjustment, the SPF lead edge adjustment must be executed. (Both surfaces)
- There must be no other sheet than the black chart on the glass surface.
- Especially when in SPF scan, the center area is scanned in the main scan direction. Be careful to prevent external light from entering the scan area.

3) Check that the lead edge is not shifted. (Both surfaces) (If the original lead edge adjustment has been made properly, even when the scan position is shifted, it is followed automatically.)

4) Change the adjustment value of the SPF scan end position. (Change the adjustment value of SIM50-6-3 from 50 to 36.)
Change the number of steps for Pin off - scan end position from 1,014 to 986.
Be sure to execute this adjustment because an image may be cut off during FAX transmission though copying is normally performed.
5) Change the initial value of the SPF exposure adjustment (SIM4620) from 50 to 53.
(For the CCD exposure adjustment with SPF, use the value of the OC adjustment value +3.)
There are suffixes of -1 SPF and -2 SPF. Change each of them.

## C. Image density (exposure) adjustment

(1) Copy mode (SIM46-2)

1) Set a test chart (UKOG-0162FCZZ) on the OC table as shown below.

2) Place three or more sheets of $A 3$ (11" x 17") paper on the test chart.
3) Execute SIM 46-2.
4) After warm-up, shading is performed and the current set value of the density (exposure) level is displayed on the display section in 2 digits.
For mode selection, use the [10-key].
5) Change the set value with the [10-key] to adjust the copy image density.
6) Make a copy and check that the specification below is satisfied.

Note: Place originals in the rear reference, and the test chart in the front reference when adjusting the exposure.
<Adjustment specification>

| Density mode | Display Lamp | Exposure level | Sharp Gray Chart output | Set value | Setting range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AUTO | AUTO | - | " 3 " is copied. | If too bright, increase the quantity displayed on the copy quantity display. If too dark, decrease the quantity displayed on the copy quantity display. | 0-99 |
| TEXT | TEXT | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { TEXT/ } \\ & \text { PHOTO } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TEXT/ } \\ & \text { PHOTO } \end{aligned}$ | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |
| PHOTO | PHOTO | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { SUPER } \\ & \text { PHOTO } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SUPER } \\ & \text { PHOTO } \end{aligned}$ | 3 | Disabled |  |  |
| TONER SAVE | AUTO (TS) | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |
|  | TEXT (TS) | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TEXT } \\ & \text { PHOTO (TS) } \end{aligned}$ | 3 | " 3 " is copied. |  |  |

## [8] SIMULATION

## 1. Operating procedures and operations

## A. Basic operation

|  | Procedure | Key operation |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Simulation mode selection | $\# \rightarrow$ INTERRUPT $\rightarrow$ C $\rightarrow$ INTERRUPT |
| 2 | Main code selection | 10-key (Input main code) $\rightarrow$ START |
| 3 | Sub code selection | 10-key (Input sub code) $\rightarrow$ START |
| 4 | Selection of the mode and <br> item | $10-\mathrm{key}$ and $\uparrow \downarrow$ |
| 5 | Start simulation operation | OK or START |
| 6 | Returns to the sub code <br> selection. | INTERRUPT |
|  | Simulation mode clear | CA |

- Selection of the main code and the sub code is set with the [START] key.
- There are two or more screens, the adjustment "Current page/Max. page" is displayed. Press [ $\uparrow$ ] key (previous page) or [ $\downarrow$ ] key to select a screen.


## B. Simulation kinds and valid key functions

## Data screen system

| Screen | Key | Function |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Counter display | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |

## Sensor check system

| Screen | Key | Function |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Sensor check <br> screen | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |

## Data setting system

| Screen | Key |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Selection of the <br> adjustment <br> items | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment item selection |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |
|  | OK | The adjustment value input screen appears. |
| Adjustment <br> value input | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | The sub code input screen appears. |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment value input |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | OK | Input final value |
|  | Back | The adjustment item select screen appears. |

## Load operation system

| Screen | Key |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Load selection | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Load number selection |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |
|  | OK | Shifts to the screen during operation. |
| Execution | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | Back | The load selection screen appears. |

## Load operation system with magnification ratio setup

| Screen | Key | Function |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Selection of the <br> number of times | CA | Simulation cancel |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | $10-$ Oney | Entry of the number of times |
|  | OK | Shifts to the magnification ration selection screen. |


| Screen | Key | Function |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Maginification <br> ratio selection | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | $\leftarrow, \rightarrow$ | Magnification ratio selection (1\% increment) |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Fixed magnification ratio setting |
|  | OK | Shifts to the screen during operation. |
|  | Back | Shifts to the number of times selection screen. |
| Execution | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | Back | Shifts to the magnification ratio setup menu. |

## Load operation system with data setup

| Screen | Key |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Selection of <br> the adjustment <br> items | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment item selection |
|  | $\downarrow, \uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |
|  | OK | The adjustment value input screen appears. |
| Adjustment <br> value input | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment value input |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | OK | Set value check |
|  | Back | The adjustment item selection screen appears. |
| Execution | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | Back | The adjustment value input screen appears. |

Single print system

| Screen | Key | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Selection of the adjustment items | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment value input |
|  | $\downarrow$, $\uparrow$ | Page switch (in the case of multiple pages) |
|  | $\leftarrow, \rightarrow$ | Item switch |
|  | OK | The adjustment value input screen appears. |
|  | START | Input value assured. $\rightarrow$ Print one page. $\rightarrow$ Shifts to the execution screen. |
| Adjustment value input | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | Back | The adjustment item selection screen appears. |
|  | 10-key | Adjustment value input |
|  | START | Determination of the input value $\rightarrow$ Print of one page $\rightarrow$ shift to the execution screen. |
| Execution | CA | After the single print, the copy conditions are cleared and the adjustment value input screen appears. |
|  | C | After the single print, the copy conditions are not cleared and the adjustment value input screen appears. |

## Load operation system with data display

| Screen | Key |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Initial stage | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Speed number selection |
|  | OK | Shifts to the screen during operation. |
| Execution | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | Back | The intial screen appears. |

## Memory clear system

| Screen | Key |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Counter <br> selection | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | C | Input value clear |
|  | 10-key | Load number selection |
|  | OK | The check screen appears. |
| Check | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |
|  | OK | Clears and shifts to the counter select menu. |
|  | Back | Not clears and shifts to the counter select menu. |

## Display check system

| Screen | Key |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Display check | CA | Cancel simulation |
|  | Interrupt | Sub code input screen appears. |

## 2. Simulation code list

For sub codes marked with "*", only display is provided. (Cannot be executed.)

| Code |  | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main | Sub |  |
| 1 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the scanner unit and its control circuit. |
|  | 2 | Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in the scanning (read) section and the related circuit. |
| 2 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the SPF unit and the related circuit. |
|  | 2 | Used to check the operation of sensors and detectors in the SPF unit and the related circuit. |
|  | 3 | Used to check the operation of the loads in the SPF unit and the control circuits. |
| 3 | 2 | Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in the finisher and the related circuit. |
|  | 3 | Used to check the operation of the load in the finisher and the control circuit. |
|  | 6 | Used to adjust the finisher jogger position. |
|  | 7 | Used to adjust the offset tray operations. |
|  | 11 | Used to check the operation of the shifter. |
| 4 | 2 | Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in the option tray and the related circuit. |
|  | 3 | Used to check the operation of the load in the option tray and the control circuit. |
| 5 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the display, LCD in the operation panel, and control circuit. |
|  | 2 | Used to check the operation of the heater lamp and the control circuit. |
|  | 3 | Used to check the operation of the copy lamp and the control circuit. |
| 6 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the loads (clutches and solenoids) in the paper transport system and the control circuit. |
|  | 2 | Used to check the operation of each fan motor and its control circuit. |
| 7 | 1 | Used to set the aging operation conditions. |
|  | 6 | Used to set the cycle of intermittent aging. |
|  | 8 | Used to set the display of the warm-up time. |
| 8 | 1 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the developing bias voltage in each copy mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 2 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (high mode) in each copy mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 3 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (low mode) in each copy mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 10 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the developing bias voltage in each printer mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 11 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (high mode) in each printer mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 12 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (low mode) in each printer mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 13 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the developing bias voltage in FAX mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 14 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (high mode) in FAX mode and the control circuit. |
|  | 15 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main charger grid voltage (low mode) in FAX mode and the control circuit. |


| Code |  | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main | Sub |  |
| 9 | 1 | Used to check and adjust the operation of the load (motor) in the duplex section and the control circuit. |
|  | 4 | Used to adjust the rotation speed of the duplex motor. |
|  | 5 | Used to adjust the switch back time of the duplex motor. |
| 10 | 0 | Used to check the operation of the toner motor and its control circuit. |
| 14 | 0 | Used to cancel excluding the self-diag U2/PF troubles. |
| 16 | 0 | Used to cancel the self-diag U2 trouble. |
| 17 | 0 | Used to cancel the self diag "PF" trouble. |
| 21 | 1 | Used to set the maintenance cycle. |
| 22 | 1 | Used to check the counter value of each section. |
|  | 2 | Used to check the total numbers of misfeed and troubles. (When the number of misfeed is considerably great, it is judged as necessary for repair. The misfeed rate is obtained by dividing this count value with the total counter value.) |
|  | 3 | Used to check the misfeed positions and the number of misfeed at each position. (When the number of misfeed is considerably great, it can be judged as necessary for repair.) |
|  | 4 | Used to check the total trouble (self diag) history. |
|  | 5 | Used to check the ROM version of each unit (section). |
|  | 7 | Used to display the key operator code |
|  | 8 | Used to check the number of use of the staple, the SPF, and scanning. |
|  | 9 | Used to check the number of use of each paper feed section. (the number of prints) |
|  | 10 | Used to check the system configuration. |
|  | 11 | FAX related counter display |
|  | 12 | Used to check the misfeed positions and the number of misfeed at each position. (When the number of misfeed is considerably great, it can be judged as necessary for repair.) |
|  | 19 | Used to display the scanner mode counter. |
| 24 | 1 | Used to clear the misfeed counter, the misfeed history, the trouble counter, and the trouble history. (The counters are cleared after completion of maintenance.) |
|  | 2 | Used to clear the number of use (the number of prints) of each paper feed section. |
|  | 3 | Used to clear the number data of use of the staple, the SPF and scanning. |
|  | 4 | Used to reset the maintenance counter. |
|  | 5 | Used to reset the developer counter. (The developer counter of the DV unit which is installed is reset.) |
|  | 6 | Used to reset the copy counter. |
|  | 7 | Used to clear the OPC drum (membrane decrease) correction counter. (This simulation is executed when the OPC drum is replaced. |
|  | 9 | Used to clear the printer print counter. (The counter is cleared after completion of maintenance.) |
|  | 10 | FAX related counter clear |
|  | 15 | Used to clear the scanner mode counter. |
| 25 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the main drive (excluding the scanner section) and to check the operation of the toner concentration sensor. (The toner concentration sensor output can be monitored.) |


| Code |  | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main | Sub |  |
| 25 | 2 | Used to make the initial setting of toner concentration when replacing developer. |
| 26 | 1 | Used to set options. (This simulation is used to make option setting when an option is installed.) |
|  | 2 | Used to detect the paper size. |
|  | 3 | Used to set the specifications of the auditor. Setting must be made depending on the use condition of the auditor. |
|  | 5 | Used to set the count mode of the total counter and the maintenance counter. |
|  | 6 | Used to set the specifications depending on the destination. |
|  | *10 | Used to enter the Software Key for the Network Scanner. (Setup is allowed only when the PCL board is installed. |
|  | *12 | Used to input the Software Key for E-MAIL RIC. |
|  | *14 | Used to input the Software Key for the PS extension kit. |
|  | *18 | Used to set enable/disable of toner save operation. |
|  | 20 | Used to set the job separator paper exit mode. |
|  | 22 | Used to set the specification (language display) for the destination. |
|  | 30 | Used to set the operation mode for CE mark. |
|  | 35 | Used to set the mode of trouble memory. |
|  | 36 | Used to set whether to stop when the maintenance life is reached. |
|  | 37 | Used to set whether to stop when the developer life is reached. |
|  | 38 | Used to set whether to stop when the drum life is reached. |
|  | 41 | Used to set whether the automatic magnification ratio select (AMS) is always ON or not when setting the pamphlet (center binding) function. |
|  | 46 | Used to set whether to meet with the output direction of images regardless of the mode when installing the finisher. |
|  | 50 | Used to set whether to use the black/white reverse function. |
|  | 54 | Used to set the PWM duty (brightness) at the center value of the LCD contrast. |
|  | 57 | Used to set the model code. |
|  | 60 | Used to set enable/disable of the FAX mode key when FAX is not installed. (When FAX is installed, the FAX mode is enabled regardless of this setup.) |
| 27 | 1 | Used to set PC/MODEM communication trouble (U7-00) detection Yes/No. |
|  | 5 | Used to enter the TAG No. of the copier. |
| 30 | 1 | Used to check the operation of sensors and detectors in the sections other than the paper feed section of the copier and the related circuit. (The operation of sensors and detectors can be monitored with the LCD.) |
|  | 2 | Used to check the operation of sensors and detectors in the paper feed section and the related circuits. (The operations of sensors and detectors in the paper feed section can be monitored with the LCD.) |
| 40 | 1 | Used to check the operation of the manual paper feed tray paper size detector and the related circuit. (The operation of the manual paper feed tray paper size detector can be monitored with the LCD.) |
|  | 2 | Used to adjust the manual paper feed tray paper width detector detection level. |
|  | 3 | The AD conversion value of manual feed width detection is displayed. |


| Code |  | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main | Sub |  |
| 41 | 1 | Used to check the document size detection photo sensor |
|  | 2 | Used to adjust the detection level of the document size photo sensor. |
|  | 3 | Used to check the light reception level and the detection level of the original size detection photo sensor. |
|  | 4 | Used to adjust the detection level of OC 20 degrees. |
| 43 | 1 | Used to set the fusing temperature in each operation mode. |
|  | 10 | Used to set the paper feed cycle for postcard. |
| 44 | 1 | Used to make various setups in each mode of process control. |
|  | 34 | Used to adjust the transfer current value. |
|  | 35 | Correction temperature setup when correcting the ambient temperature. |
|  | 40 | Used to set the rotating time before toner supply. |
| 46 | 2 | Used to adjust the copy exposure level. |
|  | *7 | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. (Super photo) |
|  | 9 | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. (Character) |
|  | 10 | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. (Character/Photo) |
|  | 11 | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. (Photo) |
|  | 12 | FAX exposure level adjustment (batch) |
|  | $\begin{gathered} 13 \text { to } \\ 16 \end{gathered}$ | FAX exposure level adjustment (individual) |
|  | 18 | Used to adjust the copy contrast. (Inclination) |
|  | 19 | Used to change the image quality in the exposure mode. |
|  | 20 | Used to correct SPF exposure. |
|  | 30 | Used to set the AE limit. |
| 48 | 1 | Used to adjust the copy mode magnification ratio (main scanning direction, sub scanning direction). |
|  | 2 | Used to adjust the scanner mode magnification ratio (main/sub scanning direction). |
|  | 3 | Used to adjust the lead edge/sub scan magnification ratio automatically. |
|  | 8 | FAX magnification ratio adjustment (read) |
|  | 9 | FAX magnification ratio adjustment (print) |
|  | 10 | FAX auto reduction magnification ratio (print). |
| 50 | 1 | Used to adjust the copy lead edge position. |
|  | 5 | Used to adjust the print image position (top margin) on the print paper in the print mode. |
|  | 6 | Used to adjust the print image position (top margin) on print paper in the copy mode. (SPF/ RSPF) |
|  | 8 | FAX lead edge adjustment (read) |
|  | 9 | FAX lead edge adjustment (print) |
|  | 10 | Used to adjust the print image center position. (Adjustment can be made for each paper feed section.) |
|  | 12 | Used to adjust the print image center position. (Adjustment can be made for each document mode.) |
| 51 | 1 | Used to adjust the OPC drum separation pawl ON time. |
|  | 2 | Used to adjust the contact pressure of paper onto the resist roller in each section (copier paper feed section, duplex paper feed section, SPF paper feed section). (When the print image position varies greatly for the paper or when a lot of paper jam troubles occur, the adjustment is required.) |


| Code |  | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main | Sub |  |
| 51 | 8 | Used to set to disable the operation of the separation pawl of the photoconductor drum. |
|  | 9 | Used to adjust ON/OFF timing of the separation voltage. |
| 53 | 8 | Used to adjust the mirror unit SPF scan position automatically. <br> For the SPF scan position auto adjustment, the mirror unit is shifted to 11 mm before the SPF glass cover edge and is moved by self-boost, and images are scanned in each step, and the position from the glass cover edge is automatically detected. <br> [Adjustment value] <br> Default: 50 Setting range: 1 to 99 <br> Adjustment unit $1=$ about 0.127 mm |
| 61 | 1 | Used to test the operation of the LSU. |
| 63 | 1 | Used to check the result of shading correction. (The shading correction data are displayed.) |
|  | 7 | Used to adjust the SPF white correction start pixel position automatically. <br> This adjustment is performed after the lens unit is replaced. |
| 64 | 1 | Self print <br> Key input = 1 <br> Self print is performed in the 2-by-4 mode (2-line print and 4-line non-print). <br> Key input $=2$ <br> Grid print is performed. (1cm, 1-dot width WLT/A3 print (A3 main scan, WLT sub scan)) |
| 65 | 5 | Used to check the operation panel. |
| 66 | 1 | FAX related soft SW setting |
|  | 2 | Initial set for the value of the FAX soft SW |
|  | 3 | FAX PWB memory check |
|  | 4 | Signal send mode |
|  | 6 | Printing the confidential password |
|  | 7 | Print the screen memory contents |
|  | 8 | Voice Message send |
|  | 10 | Image data memory clear |
|  | 11 | 300bps signals send |
|  | 13 | Send test and adjustment of the dial pulse and DTMF signal. |
|  | 17 | DTMF signal send |
|  | 21 | FAX information print |
|  | *22 | Handset sound volume adjustment |
|  | 30 | Recognize TEL/LIU state change. |
|  | 32 | Receive data check |
|  | 34 | Communication time measurement display |
|  | 37 | Speaker sound volume adjustment |
|  | 38 | Time setting/check |
|  | 41 | CI signal check |
|  | 50 | FAST SRAM clear |
|  | 51 | Signal detection check |
|  | 52 | Pseudo-ringer check |
|  | 53 | SRAM backup |
| 67 | *11 | Used to set the Select-IN signal. |
|  | *14 | Used to check write/comparison of flash programs. |
|  | *17 | Used to clear NVRAM. |
|  | *18 | Used to clear the data area for FLASH ROM Network Scanner Application. |
|  | *20 | Used to check the network connection when a scanner option is installed. |

## 3. Details

## 1



| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the scanner unit and its <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Optical (Image scanning) |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Enter the number, set the magnification ratio and the original size and press the [OK] key, and the scanner unit will operate in a speed corresponding to the setup.
(Initial screen) (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)


The fixed magnification ratio ( $25 \%$ to $400 \%$ ) can be changed in 11 steps with [ $\uparrow\}[\downarrow]$ keys.
(AB series) $25 \rightarrow 50 \rightarrow 70 \rightarrow 81 \rightarrow 86 \rightarrow 100 \rightarrow 115 \rightarrow 122 \rightarrow 141 \rightarrow$ $200 \rightarrow 400$
(Inch series) $25 \rightarrow 50 \rightarrow 64 \rightarrow 77 \rightarrow 95 \rightarrow 100 \rightarrow 121 \rightarrow 129 \rightarrow 141 \rightarrow$ $200 \rightarrow 400$
The scan counter is displayed during execution.

| Magnification ratio | $25 \%$ to $400 \%$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | $100 \%$ |
| Document size | Varies depending on the destination. |
| Set number of times | 1 to 999 (0: Continuous operation) |

## 1-2

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in <br> the scanning (read) section and the related circuit. |
| Section | Optical (Image scanning) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The status of sensors and detectors in the scanner section is displayed. The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.


| MHPS | Mirror home position sensor |
| :--- | :--- |

## 2

## 2-1

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the SPF unit and the <br> related circuit. |
| Section | SPF |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Set a document on the APF paper feed tray, and fix it with tape.
Enter the number, set the magnification ratio and the original size and press the [OK] key, and the SPF unit will operate in a speed corresponding to the setup.
(Initial screen) (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)


The magnification ratio can be selected in the range of 50\%-200\% in 9 steps with $\uparrow \downarrow$ keys.
(AB series) $50 \rightarrow 70 \rightarrow 81 \rightarrow 86 \rightarrow 100 \rightarrow 115 \rightarrow 122 \rightarrow 141 \rightarrow 200$
(Inch series) $50 \rightarrow 64 \rightarrow 77 \rightarrow 95 \rightarrow 100 \rightarrow 121 \rightarrow 129 \rightarrow 141 \rightarrow 200$
The scan counter is displayed during execution.

| Magnification ratio | $50 \%$ to $200 \%$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | $100 \%$ |
| Document size | Varies depending on the destination. |
| Single/duplex | Selectable only when RSPF is installed, fixed <br> (single) for SPF. |
| Set number of times | 1 to 999 (0: Continuous operation) |

Note: Executable only when the SPF/RSPF is installed.

| $2-2$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of sensors and detectors <br> in the SPF unit and the related circuit. |
| Section | SPF |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The operations of sensors and detectors in the SPF section are displayed.
The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.

| Sim2-2 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | SENSOR CHECK |
| EMPS | DLS1 | DLS2 |
| DWS1 | DWS2 | DWS3 |
| FGOD | DFD | RDD |
| OPCLS |  |  |


| EMPS | Empty sensor |
| :--- | :--- |
| DLS1 | Tray length sensor (small) |
| DLS2 | Tray length sensor (large) |
| DWS1 | Tray width sensor (small) |
| DWS2 | Tray width sensor (middle) |
| DWS3 | Tray width sensor (large) |
| FGOD | Paper feed cover sensor |
| DFD | Document entry detection sensor |
| RDD | Document exit sensor |
| OPCLS | Book sensor |

Note: Executable only when the SPF/RSPF is installed.

| $2-3$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose Operation test/check <br> Function <br> (Purpose) Used to check the operation of the loads in the SPF <br> unit and the control circuits. <br> Section SPF <br> Item Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The names of the loads which can be operated are displayed. Select the load to be checked with the 10-key.
(Initial screen)
(Executing screen)

| Sim2-3 OUTPUT CHECK |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 1:DTM-F | $4:$ CLH |  |  |
| 2:DTM-R | 5:GSOL |  |  |
| 3:DFSOL | 6:RSOL |  |  |
| EXEC |  |  |  |



| $1:$ DTM-F | SPF motor forward rotation |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ DTM-R | SPF motor reverse rotation |
| $3:$ DFSOL | SPF document pick-up solenoid |
| $4: \mathrm{CLH}$ | SPF document exit transport clutch |
| $5:$ GSOL | RSPF document exit gate solenoid |
| $6:$ RSOL | RSPF document pressure solenoid |

The motor for 10 sec , the solenoid ON for 500 msec , OFF for 500 msec . (20 times)
Note: Executable only when the SPF/RSPF is installed.

3-2

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in <br> the finisher and the related circuit. |
| Section | Sorter/Finisher |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Used to display the operations of sensors and detectors in the finisher section.

The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.

| Sim3-2 SENSOR 1/2 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| INPD | FWPS | JGHP1 |
| JGHP2 | JGPD | T10D |
| T1PF | PGOP | T20D |
| OFHP | T2UP | T2DN |


| INPD | Finisher paper entry sensor |
| :--- | :--- |
| FWPS | Paper width sensor |
| JGHP1 | Side guide plate HP sensor |
| JGHP2 | Rear edge plate HP sensor |
| JGPD | Tray paper empty sensor |
| T1OD | 1st tray exit sensor |
| T1PF | 1st tray paper full sensor |
| PGOP | JAM processing PG open/close detection sensor |
| T2OD | 2nd tray transport sensor |
| OFHP | Offset HP sensor |
| T2UP | Tray position sensor (upper) |
| T2DN | Tray position sensor (lower) |
| JGDSW | Tray jam processing interlock |
| EVRE | Lift-up drive control sensor |
| STHP | Staple HP sensor |
| READY | Self priming sensor |
| LSTS | Staple empty sensor |
| NCTS | Cartridge empty sensor |
| STND | Staple supply cover open/close sensor |
| T2PUD | 2nd tray upper surface sensor |

Note: Executable only when the finisher is installed.

| $3-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the load in the finisher <br> and the control circuit. |
| Section | Sorter/Finisher |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The names of the loads which can be operated are displayed. Select the load to be checked with the key.
(Initial screen)
(Executing screen)

| Sim3-3 |  |  | OUTPUT CHECK |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ JGM1 | $4:$ FM-1200 |  |  |
| $2:$ JGM2 | $5:$ EVM |  |  |
| $3:$ FM- 600 | $6:$ OFM |  |  |
| $1 / 3$ | EXEC |  |  |



During execution, [EXEC] is highlighted. Under this state, press the [BACK] key to interrupt the operation.

| $1:$ JGM1 | Side guide plate drive motor |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ JGM2 | Rear edge plate drive motor |  |
| $3:$ FM-600 | Finisher main motor (600dpi) |  |
| $4:$ FM-1200 | Finisher main motor (1200dpi) | Disabled |
| $5:$ EVM | Tray lift-up motor |  |
| $6:$ OFM | Tray offset motor |  |
| $7:$ STM | Staple operation motor |  |


| $8:$ OGSLR | Transport selection gate solenoid (R) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $9:$ OGSLL | Transport selection gate solenoid (L) |  |
| $10:$ JGSL1 | Rear edge plate drive solenoid |  |
| $11:$ JGSL2 | Upper alignment plate drive solenoid |  |
| $12:$ SHTSL | Shutter drive solenoid |  |
| $13:$ T2SCL | Paper exit roller clutch |  |
| $14:$ STGSL | Paper holding solenoid |  |

The finisher main motor operates for 10 sec , the staple motor 5 times, the tray lift-up motor one reciprocating operation, other motors max. 20 reciprocating operations from the home position, the solenoid repeats 500 msec ON and 500msec OFF 20 times.
The staple operation motor operates only when there is no cartridge installed.
Note: Executable only when the finisher is installed.

| $3-6$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the finisher jogger position. |
| Section | Sorter/Finisher |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
After the paper size is set, the side guide plate and the rear guide plate are set.

Shifts to the specified paper size position.

| (Initial screen) | (Input screen) | (Executing screen) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{ll} \frac{\text { Sim3-6 JOGGER ADJ. }}{1} \\ \hline \text { 1: PAPER SIZE } \\ \text { 2:JOGGER POS X } & \\ \text { 3:JOGGER POS Y } \end{array}$ | Sim3-6 JOGGER ADJ.   <br> 2:JOGGER POS X 50   <br> EXEC   <br>  $0-99]$  50 | $\begin{aligned} & \frac{\text { Sim3-6 JOGGER ADJ. }}{2: \text { JOGGER POS X } 50} \\ & \text { EXEC [ } 0-99] \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| 1:PAPER SIZE | Paper size <br> (1:A3, 2:A4, 3:B4, 4:B5, <br> 5:A4R, 6:WLT, 7:LT, <br> 8:LG, 9:FC, 10:LTR, <br> 11:8K, 12:16K) | 1-12 |  |
| 2:JOGGER POS X | Side guide plate | 1-99 | 50 |
| 3:JOGGER POS Y | Rear edge guide plate |  |  |

There are 6 adjustment values for the side guide plate, and 12 for the rear guide plate. The adjustment position is determined from the table below according to the paper size.
Example: When the side guide plate value is adjusted in A3, the same adjustment is made in A4. (Value 1 in the table)

| Paper size | Side guide plate <br> adjustment value number | Adjustment value number <br> of the rear edge guide <br> plate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A3 | 1 | 2 |
| A4 | 1 | 9 |
| B4 | 3 | 3 |
| B5 | 3 | 10 |
| A4R | 5 | 6 |
| WLT | 2 | 1 |
| LT | 2 | 8 |
| LG | 4 | 4 |
| FC | 4 | 5 |
| LTR | 6 | 7 |
| 8K | 6 | 11 |
| $16 K$ | $n$ | 12 |

Note: Executable only when the finisher is installed.

| $3-7$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the offset tray operations. |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure

(Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)

| Sim3-7 OFFSET ADJ. | $\frac{\text { Sim3-7 OFFSET ADJ. }}{\text { 5-OFFSET }}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1:PAPER PUSH TMG 50 | 5:OFFSET INI.POS 13 |
| [ 34-66] 50 | EXEC [ $0-99] 13$ |




Tray desc
distance after non
staple paper exit
Used to adjust the offset tray descending distance after non-staple paper exit.
The descending distance is the relative distance from the non-staple standby position.

| 3:STAPLE UP |
| :--- |
|  |
|  |
| 4:STAPLE DOWN |
|  |
| 5:OFFSET INI.POS |


| Tray lift distance <br> before staple paper <br> exit | $0-12$ | 6 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |

The height of the tray standby position in stapling is changed for that in non-stapling to improve stacking capacity in stapling. (The relative distance for the height of the tray standby position in non-stapling is set.)

| Tray descending | $0-12$ | 6 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | distance after staple paper exit

Used to adjust the offset tray descending distance after staple paper exit.
The descending distance is the relative distance from the non-staple standby position.

| Offset tray shift <br> position adjustment | $0-99$ | 13 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |

Used to shift the offset tray to the shipment position or the disassembly position.
The offset tray is shifted to the specified counter position.
(In the case of 0-94 (Shipment position: 13))

1) Initialize the offset tray normally.
2) The tray descends to the parameter position +1 pulse position.
3) The tray lifts up to the specified parameter position.
(Disassembly position: 94-99)
4) The tray descends to the bottom.

* If there is some paper in the offset tray, the tray cannot descend to the specified position. Check to insure that there is no paper in the tray before execution.
Note: Executable only when the finisher is installed.

| 3-11 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the shifter. |
| Item | Operation |
| Operation/procedure |  |
| Select with the 10-key. <br> (Initial screen) (Executing screen) |  |
|  |  |
| 1:F-R Reciprocating operation |  |
| 2:HP CHECK Home position check |  |
| [Selection 2] (Input/Selection screen) |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \frac{\text { Sim3-11 SHIFTER CHK }}{\text { SFTHP }} \\ & {[\mathbf{[ 4 ] : R \quad [ \mathbf { \Delta } ] : H P [ \mathbf { ~ } ] : \mathrm { F }}} \end{aligned}$ |  |
| SFTHP: Shifter home position (At detection, highlighted) |  |
| $[\leftarrow]$ key | Shifts the position toward R side by the specified steps. |
| [ $\rightarrow$ ] key | Shifts the position toward F side by the specified steps. |
| [ $\uparrow$ ] key | Shifts to the home position. |


| $\mid 4$ |
| :--- |
| 4 |
| $4-2$  <br> Purpose Operation test/check <br> Function <br> (Purpose) Used to check the operation of sensor and detector in <br> the option tray and the related circuit. <br> Section Paper feed <br> Item Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The operating states of the sensor and the detector are displayed.
The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.

| Sim4-2 |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PED2 | LUD2 | PFD2 | CD2 |
| PED3 LUD3 | PFD3 | CD3 |  |
| PED4 | LUD4 | PFD4 CD4 |  |
| DSWR2 | DSWR3 | DSWR4 |  |


| PED2 | 2nd cassette paper empty sensor |
| :--- | :--- |
| LUD2 | 2nd cassette paper upper limit detection sensor |
| PFD2 | 2nd cassette paper pass sensor |
| CD2 | 2nd cassette empty sensor |
| PED3 | 3rd cassette paper empty sensor |
| LUD3 | 3rd cassette paper upper limit detection sensor |
| PFD3 | 3rd cassette paper pass sensor |
| CD3 | 3rd cassette empty sensor |
| PED4 | 4th cassette paper empty sensor |
| LUD4 | 4th cassette paper upper limit detection sensor |
| PFD4 | 4th cassette paper pass sensor |
| CD4 | 4th cassette empty sensor |
| DSWR3 | 3rd cassette right door detection sensor |
| DSWR2 | 2nd cassette right door detection sensor |
| DSWR4 | 4th cassette right door detection sensor |

Note: Execution is possible only when the option cassette is installed.

| $4-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the load in the option <br> tray and the control circuit. |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Select the load to check with the 10-key.
During execution of load operation, [EXEC] is highlighted.
Pressing the [BACK] key under this state interrupts the operation.
(Initial screen) (Executing screen)

| Sim4-3 |  |  | OUTPUT CHECK |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ LUM2 | $4:$ TRC2 |  |  |
| $2:$ CPFC2 | $5:$ DM |  |  |
| $3:$ CPFS2 | $6:$ LUM3 |  |  |
| $1 / 2$ | EXEC |  |  |



| $1:$ LUM2 | 2nd cassette lift-up motor |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ CPFC2 | 2nd cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $3:$ CPFS2 | 2nd cassette paper feed clutch |
| $4:$ TRC2 | 2nd cassette transport roller clutch |
| $5:$ DM | 2nd cassette paper transport motor (3rd cassette paper <br> transport motor) |
| $6:$ LUM3 | 3rd cassette lift-up motor |
| $7:$ CPFC3 | 3rd cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $8:$ CPFS3 | 3rd cassette paper feed clutch |
| $9:$ TRC3 | 3rd cassette transport roller clutch |
| $10:$ LUM4 | 4th cassette lift-up motor |
| $11:$ CPFC4 | 4th cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $12:$ CPFS4 | 4th cassette paper feed clutch |

The motor for 10 sec , the solenoid ON for 500 msec , OFF for 500 msec . The lift-up motor operates only when the tray is opened. ( 20 times) Note: Execution is possible only when the option cassette is installed.

## 5

## 5-1

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the display, LCD in the <br> operation panel, and control circuit. |
| Section | Operation (screen/operation) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The LCD is displayed as follows. (All LED's are ON.) (Initial screen)

(6 sec later)

(6 sec later)


With the upper half section highlighted, contrast changes "Standard $\rightarrow$ MAX $\rightarrow$ MIN." in every 2 sec .

With the lower half section highlighted, contrast changes "Standard $\rightarrow$ MAX $\rightarrow$ MIN." in every 2 sec .

The back light changes in the sequence of "OFF $\rightarrow$ Red $\rightarrow$ Yellow $\rightarrow$ Green" every 2 seconds.


| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the copy lamp and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Optical (Image scanning) |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Press the [OK] key.
The copy lamp lights up for 10 sec .
(Initial screen) (Executing screen)


When 10 sec passed, the copy lamp is turned OFF.

## 6

| $6-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the loads (clutches and <br> solenoids) in the paper transport system and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Paper transport (Discharge/Switchback/Transport) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The names of the loads which can be operated are displayed. Select the load to be checked with the 10-key.


| 1:LUM1 | 1st cassette lift-up motor |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2:CPFC1 | 1st cassette pick-up solenoid |
| 3:CPFS1 | 1st cassette paper feed clutch |
| $4:$ MPFS | Manual feed pick-up solenoid |
| $5:$ RRC | Resist roller clutch |
| $6:$ PSPS | Separation pawl solenoid |
| $7:$ OGS | Paper exit gate switching solenoid |
| $8:$ LUM2 | 2nd cassette lift-up motor |
| $9:$ CPFC2 | 2nd cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $10:$ CPFS2 | 2nd cassette paper feed clutch |


| $11:$ TRC2 | 2nd cassette transport roller clutch |
| :--- | :--- |
| $12:$ LUM3 | 3rd cassette lift-up motor |
| $13:$ CPFC3 | 3rd cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $14:$ CPFS3 | 3rd cassette paper feed clutch |
| $15:$ TRC3 | 3rd cassette transport roller clutch |
| $16:$ LUM4 | 4th cassette lift-up motor |
| $17:$ CPFC4 | 4th cassette pick-up solenoid |
| $18:$ CPFS4 | 4th cassette paper feed clutch |

The motor for 10 sec , the solenoid ON for 500 msec , OFF for 500 msec . (20 times)
The lift-up motor operates only when the tray is opened.

## 6-2

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of each fan motor and its <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Others |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The names of the loads which can be operated are displayed. Select the load to be checked with the key.

| Sim6-2 FAN MOTOR |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1:VFM |  |
| 2:DCFM\&DCFM2 |  |
| 3:VFM\&DCFM\&DCFM2 |  |
| EXEC |  |



The selected fan motor is highlighted and it rotates for 10 sec .

| 1:VFM | Only the fusing fan operates |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ DCFM $\& D C F M 2$ | Power cooling fan, power cooling fan 2 <br> operations |
| $3:$ VFM $\& D C F M \& D C F M 2$ | Fusing fan, power cooling fan, and power <br> cooling fan 2 are operated at the same time. |

## 7



Operation/procedure
Select with the 10-key.


| 1: AGING | Aging enable/disable setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2:MISFEED | Jam detection enable/disable setting |
| $3:$ FUSING | Fusing operation enable/disable setting <br> The fusing temperature is not controlled. The heater is <br> not turned ON. |
| $4:$ INTERVL | Intermittent setting (Valid only when set to AGING.) |
| $5:$ WARMUP | Warm-up save setting <br> The machine goes into the ready state only by <br> shading, disregarding fusing and process control. <br> After going into the ready state, normal control is <br> performed. |
| 6:DV CHK. | Developing unit detection enable/disable setting |

Press [CA] key, and the simulation will be terminated and copying will be made with the set contents.

When selected without setup, the selected value is registered and highlighted. When selected with previous setup, the previous setup is canceled and it is displayed normally.
This setting is canceled by power OFF.
Note: In SIM 7-1, pressing [CA] key terminates the simulation and the machine enters the aging mode without resetting. Therefore, to perform "4. Intermittent setup," the intermittent cycle must be set with SIM 7-6 in advance.
Reset is not performed when the machine enters the aging mode.

## 7-6

| Purpose | Setting/Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the cycle of intermittent aging. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the interval aging cycle time (sec) with the 10-key pad. Refer to 7-1.


| Setting range | $1-255$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | 3 |


| $7-8$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting/Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the display of the warm-up time. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Warm-up starts by the cover open/close.
(Can be performed repeatedly by open/close of the cover.)
The warm-up time is counted up and displayed in the unit of sec.
(Initial screen) (Executing screen) (Initial screen after completion)

| Sim7-8 WARM UP TIME |
| :--- |
| PLEASE COVER |
| OPEN AND CLOSE |


| Sim7-8 WARM UP TIME |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :---: |
| WARMING UP, |  |  |
| PLEASE WAIT. |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  | 1 |  |

> | Sim7-8 WARM UP TIME |
| :--- |
| PLEASE COVER |
| OPEN AND CLOSE |
| WARM UP COMPLETED. |

If the [CA] key is pressed at this time, count-up is interrupted to terminate the simulation. (However, warm-up is continued.)
After completion of warming up, "WARM UP COMPLETED" is displayed and the control returns to the initial screen.

## 8

## 8-1

| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the <br> developing bias voltage in each copy mode and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |

## Operation/procedure

After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30 sec .


| Display items | Content | Installation range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE | AE (*) | 200-550 | 400 (-400V) |
| 2:TEXT | Character |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 3:TEXT/PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 4 : PHOTO | Photo |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO * | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| 6:TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | 376 (-376V) |

(*) Linked with the destinations of SIM 26-6.
Linked with the auto exposure mode of SIM 46-19-1.

* SUPER PHOTO (5:) cannot be executed.

When [OK] or [START] key is pressed, a caution buzzer sounds. (Only the adjustment value can be entered.)
The minimum increment is 2 V .
The result of (Set value - 199) / 2 is stored in the EEPROM.
When reading a value from the EEPROM, the value of (EEP value *2) +200 is used as the set value.
Therefore, the set value entered must be an even number. If an odd number is entered the entered odd number +1 is displayed after pressing [OK] key.

| 8-2 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose Adjustment/Operation test/check <br> Function <br> (Purpose) Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (high mode) in each copy mode <br> and the control circuit. <br> Section Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) <br>  Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30sec.
The input value is in the increment of -25 V .

| (Initial screen) | (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sim8-2 MHV $(\mathrm{H}) \cdot \mathrm{COPY}$ <br> $1: \mathrm{AE}$ 3 <br> 2:TEXT 5 <br> $3:$ TEXT/ PHOTO 5 <br> $1 / 2$  | $\begin{aligned} & \frac{\operatorname{Sim} 8-2 \mathrm{MHV}(\mathrm{H}) \cdot \mathrm{COPY}}{} \begin{array}{l} 5: \text { SUPER PHOTO } \\ \\ \text { EXEC } \\ {\left[\begin{array}{lll} 1- & 1 \end{array}\right]} \\ \hline \end{array} \end{aligned}$ | Sim8 5:SU EXEC |  |
| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| 1:AE | AE (*) | 1-8 | 3 (-530V) |
| 2:TEXT | Character |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 3:TEXT/ PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 4: PHOTO | Photo |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO * | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| 6:TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | 2 (-505V) |

(*) Linked with the destinations of SIM 26-6.
Linked with the auto exposure mode of SIM 46-19-1.

* SUPER PHOTO (5:) cannot be executed.

When [OK] or [START] key is pressed, a caution buzzer sounds. (Only the adjustment value can be entered.)

| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1 ), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

| $8-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (low mode) in each copy mode <br> and the control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30sec.
The input value is in the increment of -25 V .
(Initial screen) (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)

| $\mathrm{Sim8}-3$ |  |  | MHV (L) $) \cdot \mathrm{COPY}$ |
| :--- | ---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1: \mathrm{AE}$ | 3 |  |  |
| $2: \mathrm{TEXT}$ | 5 |  |  |
| $3: \mathrm{TEXT} /$ PHOTO | 5 |  |  |
| $1 / 2$ |  |  |  |


| Sim8-3 MHV (L) •COPY | Sim8-3 MHV (L) - COPY |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO 3 | 5:SUPER PHOTO 3 |
| EXEC [ 1- 8] 3 | EXEC [ 1- 8] 3 |


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| $1:$ AE | AE $(*)$ | $1-8$ | $3(-400 \mathrm{~V})$ |
| $2:$ TEXT | Character |  | $5(-450 \mathrm{~V})$ |
| $3:$ TEXT/PHOTO | Character/Photo |  | $5(-450 \mathrm{~V})$ |
| $4:$ PHOTO | Photo |  | $5(-450 \mathrm{~V})$ |
| $5:$ SUPER PHOTO * | Super photo |  | Disabled |
| $6:$ TONER SAVE | Toner save |  | $2(-375 \mathrm{~V})$ |

(*) Linked with the destinations of SIM 26-6.
Linked with the auto exposure mode of SIM 46-19-1.

* SUPER PHOTO (5:) cannot be executed.

When [OK] or [START] key is pressed, a caution buzzer sounds.
(Only the adjustment value can be entered.)

| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

| $8-10$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the <br> developing bias voltage in each printer mode and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |

Operation/procedure
After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30sec.
(Initial screen) (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)

| Sim8-10 DV BIAS•PRT |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :---: |
| 1:DENS1 (600) | 400 |  |
| 2:DENS2 (600) | 450 |  |
| $3: \operatorname{DENS3}(600)$ | 450 |  |
| $1 / 4$ |  |  |


| Sim8-10 DV BIAS•PRT |  | Sim8-10 DV BIAS•PRT |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5:DENS5 (600) | 500 | 5:DENS5 (600) | 500 |
| EXEC [200-550] | 500 | EXEC [200-550 | 500 |


| Display items | Content | Installation range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:DENS1 (600) | Density 1 (600dpi) | 200-550 | 400 (-400V) |
| 2:DENS2 (600) | Density 2 (600dpi) |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 3:DENS3 (600) | Density 3 (600dpi) |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 4:DENS4 (600) | Density 4 (600dpi) |  | 450 (-450V) |
| 5:DENS5 (600) | Density 5 (600dpi) |  | 500 (-500V) |
| 6:TS (600) | Toner save (600dpi) |  | 350 (-350V) |
| 7:DENS1 (1200) | Density 1 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 8:DENS2 (1200) | Density 2 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 9:DENS3 (1200) | Density 3 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 10:DENS4 (1200) | Density 4 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 11:DENS5 (1200) | Density 5 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |

The minimum increment is 2 V .
The result of (Set value - 199) / 2 is stored in the EEPROM.
When reading a value from the EEPROM, the value of (EEP value *2) +200 is used as the set value.
Therefore, the set value entered must be an even number. If an odd number is entered the entered odd number +1 is displayed after pressing [OK] key.

## 8-11

| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (high mode) in each printer mode <br> and the control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30 sec .
The input value is in the increment of -25 V .
(Initial screen) (Input/Selection screen) (Executing screen)

| 1:DENS1 (600) | 3 |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2:DENS2 (600) | 5 |
| $3:$ DENS3 (600) | 5 |
| $1 / 4$ |  |


| Sim8-11 MHV (H) - PRT |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5:DENS5 (600) | 7 |
| EXEC [ 1- 8] |  |

Sim8-11 MHV (H) • PRT 5:DENS5 (600) 7

XEC [ 1- 8]

| Display items | Content | Installation range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:DENS1 (600) | Density 1 (600dpi) | 1-8 | 5 (-580V) |
| 2:DENS2 (600) | Density 2 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 3:DENS3 (600) | Density 3 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 4:DENS4 (600) | Density 4 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-580V) |
| 5: DENS5 (600) | Density 5 (600dpi) |  | 7 (-630V) |
| 6:TS (600) | Toner save (600dpi) |  | 3 (-530V) |
| 7:DENS1 (1200) | Density 1 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 8:DENS2 (1200) | Density 2 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 9:DENS3 (1200) | Density 3 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 10:DENS4 (1200) | Density 4 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 11:DENS5 (1200) | Density 5 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |


| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1 ), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

| $8-12$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (low mode) in each printer mode <br> and the control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

After selecting the mode, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output will be made for 30 sec .
The input value is in the increment of -25 V .

(Input/Selectionscreen) (Executing screen)


| Display items | Content | Installation range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:DENS1 (600) | Density 1 (600dpi) | 1-8 | 5 (-450V) |
| 2:DENS2 (600) | Density 2 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-450V) |
| 3:DENS3 (600) | Density 3 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-450V) |
| 4:DENS4 (600) | Density 4 (600dpi) |  | 5 (-450V) |
| 5:DENS5 (600) | Density 5 (600dpi) |  | 7 (-500V) |
| 6:TS (600) | Toner save (600dpi) |  | 3 (-400V) |
| 7:DENS1 (1200) | Density 1 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 8:DENS2 (1200) | Density 2 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 9:DENS3 (1200) | Density 3 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 10: DENS4 (1200) | Density 4 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |
| 11:DENS5 (1200) | Density 5 (1200dpi) |  | Disabled |


| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1 ), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

| $8-13$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the <br> developing bias voltage in FAX mode and the control <br> circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output operation is performed for 30 sec .
(Initial screen) (Executing screen)


| Setting range | $200-550$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | 426 |

The minimum increment is 2 V .
The result of (Set value - 199) / 2 is stored in the EEPROM.
When reading a value from the EEPROM, the value of (EEP value *2) +200 is used as the set value.
Therefore, the set value entered must be an even number. If an odd number is entered the entered odd number +1 is displayed after pressing [OK] key.

## 8-14

| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (high mode) in FAX mode and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output operation is performed for 30 sec .
(Initial screen) (Executing screen)


| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

## 8-15

| Purpose | Adjustment/Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the main <br> charger grid voltage (low mode) in FAX mode and the <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key, and output operation is performed for 30sec.


| Setting range | $1-8$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | 5 |


| NO. | Set value | Grid High | Grid Low |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 480 | -480 V | -350 V |
| 2 | 505 | -505 V | -375 V |
| 3 | 530 | -530 V | -400 V |
| 4 | 555 | -555 V | -425 V |
| 5 | 580 | -580 V | -450 V |
| 6 | 605 | -605 V | -475 V |
| 7 | 630 | -630 V | -500 V |
| 8 | 655 | -655 V | -525 V |

*1. The negative value of the set value corresponds to the grid high output voltage.
*2. The set values can be selected from the above 8 patterns only.
*3. The selected pattern determines the grid high voltage and the grid low voltage.
If, for example, the grid high voltage is set to -480 V (pattern 1), the grid low voltage is -350 V .

## 9



| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check and adjust the operation of the load <br> (motor) in the duplex section and the control circuit. |
| Section | Duplex |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Select with the 10-key and operate for 30 seconds.


| 1:DMF600 | Duplex motor forward rotation (600dpi) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2:DMF1200 | Duplex motor forward rotation (1200dpi) | Disabled |
| 3:DMR600 | Duplex motor reverse rotation (600dpi) |  |
| 4:DMR1200 | Duplex motor reverse rotation (1200dpi) | Disabled |

## 9-4

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the rotation speed of the duplex motor. |
| Section | Duplex |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Set the rotation speed of the duplex motor.


## 9-5

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the switch back time of the duplex <br> motor. |

## Operation/procedure

Set the switch back time of the duplex motor.


| Display items | Installation range | Default |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1: 600 \mathrm{dpi}$ | $18-76$ | 50 |
| $2: 1200 \mathrm{dpi}$ |  | Disabled |

## 10

10-0

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the toner motor and its <br> control circuit. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |
|  | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Press the [OK] key and operate the toner motor for 30 sec .
Pressing the [INTERRUPT] key interrupts the operation, and the display returns to the main code entry screen.


14

| 14-0 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Clear/Cancel (Trouble etc.) |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to cancel excluding the self-diag U2/PF troubles. |  |
| Item | Trouble | Error |

Operation/procedure
When the [OK] key is pressed, the trouble is canceled.
(Initial screen)
(Process check screen)

| Sim14 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| TROUBLE CLEAR |
| (WITHOUT U2, PF) |
| PRESS OK KEY |


| Sim14 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| TROUBLE CLEAR |
| (WITHOUT U2, PF) |
| ARE YOU SURE? |

## 16

16-0

| Purpose | Clear/Cancel (Trouble etc.) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to cancel the self-diag U2 trouble. |  |
| Item | Trouble | Error |

Operation/procedure
When the [OK] key is pressed, the trouble is canceled.
(Initial screen)
(Process check screen)

| Sim16 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| U2 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| PRESS OK KEY |


| Sim16 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| U2 TROUBLE CLEAR |
|  |
|  |
| ARE YOU SURE? |

## 17

## 17-0

| Purpose | Cancel (Trouble, etc) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to cancel the self diag "PF" trouble. |  |
| Item | Trouble | Error |

## Operation/Procedure

When the [OK] key is pressed, the trouble is canceled.
(Initial screen)

| Sim17 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| PF TROUBLE CLEAR |
| PRESS OK KEY |

(Execution check screen)

| Sim17 TROUBLE CLEAR |
| :--- |
| PF TROUBLE CLEAR |
|  |
| ARE YOU SURE? |

21

21-1

| Purpose | Setting |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the maintenance cycle. |  |
| Item | Specifications | Counter |

Operation/procedure
Enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key.

| Sim21-1 CYCLE SET. |
| :---: |
| MAINTE CYCLE |
| (0:5 1:10 2:20 3:25 |
| :50 5:80K 6:FREE) |
| $0-$ |


| Item | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 5K (5000 sheets) | 0-6 | 4 |
| 1 | 10K (10000 sheets) |  |  |
| 2 | 20K (20000 sheets) |  |  |
| 3 | 25K (25000 sheets) |  |  |
| 4 | 50K (50000 sheets) |  |  |
| 5 | 80K (80000 sheets) |  |  |
| 6 | FREE |  |  |

## 22

22-1

| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the counter value of each section. |
| Item | Counter |

Operation/procedure
Counter is displayed.


| TOTAL | Total | IMC | IMC counter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MAINTE | Maintenance | DUPLEX | Duplex counter |
| DEVE | Developer counter |  |  |
| DRUM | Drum counter | OTHERS | The other counters |
| COPY | Copy counter | FAX SEND | FAX Send counter |
| PRINTER | Printer counter | FAX RCV | FAX receive counter |

## 22-2

| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the total numbers of misfeed and <br> troubles. (When the number of misfeed is considerably <br> great, it is judged as necessary for repair. The misfeed <br> rate is obtained by dividing this count value with the <br> total counter value.) |
| Item | Trouble |

## Operation/procedure

Counter data is displayed

| Sim22-2 | JAM/TROUBLE |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| JAM | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| SPF JAM | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| TROUBLE | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
|  |  |  |


| $22-3$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the misfeed positions and the number of <br> misfeed at each position. (When the number of <br> misfeed is considerably great, it can be judged as <br> necessary for repair.) |  |
| Item | Trouble |  | Mis-feed 

## Operation/procedure

The misfeed history is displayed in the sequence of recentness by the name of sensors and detectors. Max. 40 items of information can be stored in memory. (The old ones are deleted sequentially.) The trouble section may be determined by the data.

| Sim22-3 |  |  | JAM HIS.1/5 |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Xxxxxxx | Xxxxxxx |  |  |
| Xxxxxxx | Xxxxxxx |  |  |
| Xxxxxxx | Xxxxxxx |  |  |
| Xxxxxxx | Xxxxxxx |  |  |


| Error code | Name | Sensor name | Paper <br> Reached/Not reached to Sensor |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1ST_PICK | 1st cassette pickup mistake | 1st cassette P-IN sensor | Not Reached *1 |
| 2ND_PICK | 2nd cassette pickup mistake | 2nd cassette paper pass sensor | Not reached *1 |
| 3RD_PICK | 3rd cassette pickup mistake | 3rd cassette paper pass sensor | Not reached *1 |
| 4TH_PICK | 4th cassette pickup mistake | 4th cassette paper pass sensor | Not reached *1 |
| HND_PICK | Multi manual feed pickup mistake | Manual feed P-IN sensor | Not reached |
| PIN_TOP | P-IN sensor lead edge jam | 2nd cassette paper pass sensor | Reached (from 2nd cassette only) |
|  |  | P-IN sensor or manual feed P-IN sensor | Not reached |
| PIN_END | P-IN sensor rear edge jam | P-IN sensor | Reached (1st cassette) |
|  |  | Manual feed P-IN sensor | Reached (2, 3, 4, DUP, manual feed) |
| PIN_DUP | P-IN sensor reversion jam | Manual feed P-IN sensor | Not reached (DUP) |
| DPX_TOP | Duplex sensor lead edge jam | P-IN sensor or manual feed P-IN sensor | Reached |
|  |  | DUP sensor (Paper exit sensor) | Not reached |


| Error code | Name | Sensor name | Paper <br> Reached/Not reached to Sensor |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DPX_END | Duplex sensor rear edge jam | P-OUT sensor (1st paper exit sensor) | Reached |
|  |  | DUP sensor (Paper exit sensor) | Either of Reached/Not reached |
| UPO_TOP | 2nd paper exit lead edge jam | DUP sensor (Paper exit sensor) | Reached |
|  |  | P-OUT sensor (2nd paper exit sensor) | Not reached |
| UPO_END | 2nd paper exit rear edge jam | P-OUT sensor (2nd paper exit jam) | Reached |
|  |  | FIN_P_IN sensor | Not reached |
| LPO_TOP | 1st paper exit lead edge jam | DUP sensor | Reached |
|  |  | P-OUT sensor (1st paper exit sensor) | Not reached |
| LPO_END | 1st paper exit rear edge jam | P-OUT sensor (1st paper exit sensor) | Reached |
| PS | Abnormality between PS paper |  |  |
| 2ND_TOP | 2nd paper pass lead edge jam *2 | 3rd (4th) cassette paper pass sensor | Reached (from 3rd, 4th cassette only) |
| 3RD_TOP | 3rd paper pass lead edge jam *3 | 4th cassette paper pass sensor | Reached (from 4th cassette only) |
| 4th_TOP, END | 4th paper pass jam |  | Does not occur. |
| DPX_SHORT | Duplex short size error |  | *4 |
| DPX_LONG | Duplex long size error |  | *4 |
| FIN_PIN | Finisher paper in jam | FIN_P_IN sensor | Reached |
| FIN_ESCP | Escape (upper stage) tray jam | FIN_ESC sensor | Reached *5 |
| FIN_OFST | Offset (lower stage) tray jam | FIN_P_OFSET sensor | Reached |
| FIN_STPL | Staple tray jam | FIN_STPL sensor | Reached |

*1. Not reached, double fed and the next paper reached the paper-in sensor.
*2. Detects that paper from 3rd (4th) stage enters 2nd stage.
*3. Detects that paper from 4th stage enters 3rd stage.
*4. The passing time over P-IN sensor (manual feed P-IN sensor) of the front surface differs greatly from that of the back surface.
*5. Occurs when not reached either of FIN_ESC sensor and FIN_P_OFSET sensor.

| $22-4$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the total trouble (self diag) history. |
| Item | Trouble |

Operation/procedure
The trouble error codes are displayed in the sequence of the latest one first. Max. 40 items of information are stored. (Older ones are deleted in sequence.) The machine condition can be estimated by this data.


22-5

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the ROM version of each unit (section). |
| Item | Software |

## Operation/procedure

ROM and CPU data of each section are displayed.

| Sim22-5 ROM VER.1/2 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| S/N | $: 0000000000$ |  |
| MCU | $: 00.00$ |  |
| IMC | $: 00.00$ |  |
| OPE | $: 00.00$ |  |

## [Display example]

ROM version $1.250 \rightarrow$ [1.25] (upto 2 decimal places)
The display of the protocol monitor and the soft SW follows this display.

| S/N | Machine serial number | PRINTER | PRINTER |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MCU | Main Control Unit | NIC | NIC |
| IMC | IMC | FINISHER | FINISHER |
| OPE | Panel + Panel label code *1 | FAX | FAX |

When not installed, "----------" is displayed.
*1: The LCD backlight PWB attachment label code is displayed in three ASCII characters after the version display of 10PE (panel). (Display, XXX section)

* Execution is inhibited until GDI or PCL board is securely installed. (Because the board is detected by the software.)
[Label code display content]
Display XXX section content

| Panel display | Destination | Selection code |  | Panel software support language |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E/F | SEC | AJ/AM |  | American English, French |
|  | SECL | AL/AC |  |  |
| JP | Japan |  |  | Japanese |
| BG | Other Europe distributors | BG/BD |  | English, French, German, Italian, Dutch, Spanish, Portuguese |
|  | AB series agents | BE/BT | UH1/UQ3/ UQ2/SF4/ UE1/UE4/ UW2/SL4/ UE6 |  |
| GG | SEEG | CG/GD |  | English, German, Turkish, Greek, Polish, Hungarian, Czech |
| DG | SES | DG/DD |  | English, German, Swedish, Finnish, Norwegian, Danish |


| Panel display | Destination | Selection code |  | Panel software support language |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CHN | China distributors | BE/BT | UE5 | Chinese |
| E/S | SCA/SCNZ | BA/BN |  | English, Spanish |
|  | SUK | BK/BB |  |  |
|  | Philippine | AE/AT | UG2 |  |
|  | LAG2/LAG4 | AE/AT | UB5/SF2 |  |
| E/R |  |  |  | English, Russian |
| TW | Taiwan | BE/BT |  | English, Taiwanese |
| F/E | SMEF | BE/BT | SF1 *2 | English, French |
| GGR |  |  |  | English, German, Turkish, Greek, Polish, Hungarian, Czech, Russian |
| --- |  |  |  | Not defined |

*2: AB series agents (SRH (Hong Kong), Brazil, Saudi Arabia, STCL, Indonesia, South Africa, Special Countries, Yemen, Cyprus, Oman, Qatar, Barren, Kuwait, UAS, SRS, SRSSC)

| $22-7$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | User data output/Check (Display/Print) |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to display the key operator code <br> Item | Data |

Operation/procedure
Key operation code is displayed.


| $22-8$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the number of use of the staple, the <br> SPF, and scanning. |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

The data shows the use frequency of each section.

| Sim22-8 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ORG. | STAPPLE |  |
| SPF | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| SCAN | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| STAPLE | $:$ | nnnnnnn |


| SPF | SPF counter |
| :--- | :--- |
| SCAN | Scan counter |
| STAPLE | Stapler counter |


| $22-9$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the number of use of each paper feed <br> section. (the number of prints) |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

The data shows the use frequency of each paper feed section.

| Sim22-9 | FEED | $1 / 2$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: |
| BYPASS | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| TRAY1 | $:$ | nnnnnnn |
| TRAY2 | $:$ | nnnnnnnn |
| TRAY3 | $:$ | nnnnnnn |


| BYPASS | Manual feed counter | TRAY3 | Tray 3 counter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| TRAY1 | Tray 1 counter | TRAY4 | Tray 4 counter |
| TRAY2 | Tray 2 counter |  |  |

## 22-10

| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the system configuration. |
| Item | Specifications |

## Operation/procedure

The detected machine composition is displayed.


| Display items | Display items |
| :--- | :--- |
| SPEED | 23CPM/27CPM/25CPM |
| DF | NONE/[1: SPF]/[2: RSPF] |
| OUTPUT | NONE/[3: Finisher]/[4: Job separator] |
| CASSETTE1 | NONE/[5: One-step paper feed unit] |
| CASSETTE2 | NONE/[6: Two-step paper feed unit] |
| IMC MEM | 0/Expansion memory capacity (MB) |
| PRINTER | NONE/[7: PCL] |
| PS3 | NONE/[8: PS3] |
| NIC | NONE/[9: NIC] |
| SCANNER | NONE/[10: SCANNER] |
| FAX | NONE/[11: FAX] |
| FAX MEM | NONE/Memory capacity (MB) |
| HAND SET | NONE/[12: Handset] |

NONE: "--------" is displayed
[ ]: Shows the product code in the list below.

| No. | Item | Model code |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | AR model | DM model |
| 1 | SPF | AR-SP4N | DM-SP2 |
| 2 | RSPF | AR-RP3N | DM-RP1 |
| 3 | Finisher | AR-FN5N | DM-FN1 |
| 4 | Job separator | AR-TR3 | STANDARD |
| 5 | 1 tray paper feed unit | AR-D11N (*1) | DM-DE3 (*1) |
| 6 | 2 tray paper feed unit | AR-D12N (*1) | DE-DE4 (*) |
| 7 | PRINTER | GDI: AR-EB4 | STANDARD |
| 8 | PS3 | AR-PK1 | STANDARD |
| 9 | NIC | AR-NC5J | STANDARD |
| 10 | SCANNER | AR-NS2 | DM-NS1 |
| 11 | FAX | AR-FX4 | DM-FX2 |
| 12 | Handset | AR-HN4 | - |

*1: Installed quantity is displayed in ( ).
For the cassettes, only the option cassette is displayed.

* Execution is inhibited until GDI or PCL board is securely installed.
(Because the board is detected by the software.)

22-11

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX related counter display |
| Operation/procedure |  |

The current counter value (number of send/receive pages) of the FAX send/receive counter and the accumulated reception time and the print counter are displayed.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

22-12

| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the misfeed positions and the number of <br> misfeed at each position. (When the number of <br> misfeed is considerably great, it can be judged as <br> necessary for repair.) |
| Section | SPF |
| Item | Trouble |

## Operation/procedure

Fourty SPF JAM history datas are displayed sequentially from the latest.


| Error code | Name | Sensor name | Paper Reached/ <br> Not reached to <br> Sensor |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PI_TOP | SPF paper-in <br> lead edge jam | SPF P-IN sensor | Not reached |
| PI_END | SPF paper-in rear <br> edge jam | SPF P-IN sensor | Reached |
| JAM_REV | SPF duplex <br> reversion jam | SPF P-IN sensor | Not reached <br> (paper after <br> reversion) |
| PO_TOP | SPF paper-out <br> lead edge jam | SPF P-IN sensor | Reached, P- <br> OUT not <br> reached |
| PO_END | SPF paper-out <br> rear edge jam | SPF P-OUT <br> sensor | Reached, P-IN <br> is passed (OFF). |
| ORG_LONG | SPF long size <br> error | SPF P-OUT <br> sensor | Reached |
|  | SPF P-IN sensor | Reached |  |
| RPF short size | SPF P-IN sensor | Pass (OFF at <br> JAM) |  |

22-19

| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to display the scanner mode counter. |
| Item | Trouble |

## Operation/procedure

Counter data is displayed.


SCANMODE $\quad$ Scanner mode counter

## 24

| $24-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to clear the misfeed counter, the misfeed history, <br> the trouble counter, and the trouble history. (The <br> counters are cleared after completion of maintenance.) |
| Item | Counter |

Operation/procedure
Each counter is cleared individually. (The history of each counter is deleted when clearing)
(Initial screen)
(Check screen)

| Sim24-1 COUNTER CLR |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| $1:$ JAM |  |
| 2:SPF JAM |  |
| $3:$ TROUBLE | 2 |



| $1:$ JAM | JAM counter/JAM history |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ SPF JAM | SPF JAM counter/SPF JAM history |
| $3:$ TROUBLE | Trouble counter/Trouble history |


| $24-2$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to clear the number of use (the number of prints) <br> of each paper feed section. |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Clear the counters individually.
(Initial screen) (Check screen)

| Sim24-2 |  |  | COUNTER CLR |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 1:BYPASS | $4:$ TRAY3 |  |  |
| 2:TRAY1 | 5:TRAY4 |  |  |
| 3:TRAY2 |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |



| 1: BYPASS | Manual feed counter | $4:$ TRAY3 | Tray 3 counter |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ TRAY1 | Tray 1 counter | $5:$ TRAY4 | Tray 4 counter |
| $3:$ TRAY2 | Tray 2 counter |  |  |


| $24-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to clear the number data of use of the staple, the <br> SPF and scanning. |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Clear the counters individually.
(Initial screen)
(Check screen)


| $1:$ SPF | SPF counter |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ SCAN | Scan counter |
| 3:STAPLE | Stapler counter |


| $24-4$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to reset the maintenance counter. |
| Item | Counter |

Operation/procedure
Press the [OK] key

| (Initial screen) | (Check screen) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sim24-4 COUNTER CLR <br> MAINTENANCE COUNTER <br> CLEAR | Sim24-4 COUNTER CLR <br> MAINTENANCE COUNTER <br> CLEAR <br> PRESS OK KEY |


| $24-5$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to reset the developer counter. (The developer <br> counter of the DV unit which is installed is reset.) |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |
|  | Counter |

Operation/procedure
Press the [OK] key

| (Initial screen) | (Check screen) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sim24-5 COUNTER CLR <br> DEVELOPER COUNTER <br> CLEAR | Sim24-5 COUNTER CLR <br> DEVELOPER COUNTER <br> CLEAR |
| PRESS OK KEY | ARE YOU SURE? |


| $24-6$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to reset the copy counter. |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Press the [OK] key.
(Initial screen) (Check screen)

| Sim24-6 COUNTER CLR |
| :--- |
| COPIES COUNTER |
| CLEAR |
| PRESS OK KEY |

Sim24-6 COUNTER CLR
COPIES COUNTER
CLEAR
ARE YOU SURE?

24-7

| Purpose | Data clear |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to clear the OPC drum (membrane decrease) <br> correction counter. (This simulation is executed when <br> the OPC drum is replaced. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Photo conductor |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Press the [OK] key
(Initial screen)
$\frac{\text { Sim24-7 COUNTER CLR }}{\text { DRUM COUNTER CLEAR }}$
PRESS OK KEY
(Check screen)
Sim24-7 COUNTER CLR DRUM COUNTER CLEAR

ARE YOU SURE?


Clear the counters individually.
(Initial screen)

| Sim24-9 COUNTER CLR |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| 1:PRINTER | 4:OTHERS |
| 2:IMC |  |
| 3:DUPLEX |  |
|  | 2 |

(Check screen)


| $1:$ PRINTER | Printer counter |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ IMC | IMC counter |
| $3:$ DUPLEX | DUPLEX counter |
| $4:$ OTHERS | The other counters |

24-10

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX related counter clear |

## Operation/procedure

The current counter value (number of send/receive pages) of the FAX send/receive counter and the accumulated reception time and the print counter are cleared to 0.

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $24-15$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Data clear |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to clear the scanner mode counter. |
| Item | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Press the [OK] key.
The scanner mode counter and the number of send of the scanner are cleared.

| (Initial screen) | (Process check screen) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sim24-15 COUNTERCLR |  |
| SCANNER MODE <br> COUNTER CLEAR | Sim24-15 COUNTERCLR <br> SCANNER MODE <br> COUNTER CLEAR |
| PRESS OK KEY | ARE YOU SURE? |

* Execution is inhibited until GDI or PCL board is securely installed. (Because the board is detected by the software.)


## 25

## 25-1

| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the main drive <br> (excluding the scanner section) and to check the <br> operation of the toner concentration sensor. (The toner <br> concentration sensor output can be monitored.) |
| Section | DRIVE |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The operation of the drive system is checked.
Toner density control sensor value is displayed.
Select the mode with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the main motor will rotate and the toner concentration control sensor value will be displayed.
After execution, interruption cannot be made for about 7 sec . ([CA] key, [INTERRUPT] key, and [BACK] key are invalid.)
(Initial screen)
Sim25-1 MAIN MOTOR
1:600dpi
2:1200dpi
EXEC
(Executing screen)


* Even though in toner END, if no other error (including cover open) occurs after supplying power, execution of this command is allowed.


## 25-2

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to make the initial setting of toner concentration <br> when replacing developer. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
|  | Developer/Toner hopper |

## Operation/procedure

1) Open the cover.
2) Power ON. (The mechanism cannot be initialized because the cover is open.)
3) Install the developing unit with new developer in it.
4) Enter SIM 25-2.
5) Close the cover immediately before starting the operation.
6) Press the $[\mathrm{OK}]$ key to start.

Sampling is made 54 times every 600 ms , and the average of the last three times in the last 1.8 sec of 3 min is stored.

When "EE-EU" or "EE-EL" after completion, an error display is shown.
EU error occurs when the finally calculated toner concentration reference value is 179 or greater.
EL error occurs when the finally calculated toner concentration reference value is 77 or smaller.
(Initial screen)
(Executing screen)


Sim25-2 AUTO DV ADJ AUTO DEVE ADJUST
[128]
EXEC

Note: After completion of execution, be sure to press the [CA] key to cancel the simulation

## [CRUM-related error cancel procedure]

- When "CRUM DEVICE ERROR" is displayed:

Error content: Occurs in case of a communication error between the machine and CRUM.
Cancel procedure: Reset with [CA] key and cancel with SIM 16.

- "CRUM DATA ERROR"

Error content: CRUM identification error, CRUM model error, CRUM type error, CRUM destination error
Cancel procedure: Install the CRUM which is satisfactory with the machine setup, reset with the [CA] key, and execute SIM 25-2 again.

- "DEVE UNIT NONE"

Error content: Occurs when the developing unit is not installed in an AR model.

Cancel procedure: It returns to the state before execution of auto developer adjustment. It is canceled by the operations of Cover open $\rightarrow$ Developing unit installation $\rightarrow$ Cover close. Therefore, developer adjustment is started by pressing [OK] key.

## - "TONER UNIT NONE"

Error content: Occurs when the CRUM is not installed in a DM model.
Cancel procedure: It returns to the state before execution of auto developer adjustment. It is canceled by the operations of Cover open $\rightarrow$ CRUM installation $\rightarrow$ Cover close. Therefore, developer adjustment is started by pressing [OK] key.

- "EU ERROR"

Error content:
Occurs when the toner concentration reference value calculated in developer adjustment finally is 179 or greater.
Cancel procedure: Reset with [CA] key and execute SIM 25-2 again.

- "EL ERROR"

Error content:
Occurs when the toner concentration reference value calculated in developer adjustment finally is 77 or smaller.
Cancel procedure: Reset with [CA] key and execute SIM 25-2 again.

26

26-1

| Purpose | Setting |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set options. (This simulation is used to make <br> option setting when an option is installed.) |  |
| Item | Specifications |  |

## Operation/procedure

Set the job separator.


## 26-2

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to detect the paper size. |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Specifications |

Operation/procedure
Used to set the automatic size detection.

| 1: B4/LG, FC | Setting to detect B4/Legal as FC <br> 0: B4 legal is detected as B4 legal. <br> 1: B4 legal is detected as FC. |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2: A4 <->LT | This setup detects Letter as A4 in the inch series and <br> A4 as Letter in the AB series. <br> 0: Detection disable <br> 1: Detection valid |

(Initial screen) (Input screen)

| Sim26-2 SIZE SET |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| $1: \mathrm{B} 4 / \mathrm{LG}, \mathrm{FC}$ | 0 |
| $2: \mathrm{A} 4<->\mathrm{LT}$ | 0 |
|  | 1 |


$8.5^{\prime \prime} \times 13$ " detection valid/invalid setup

| Set value | Setup | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | Detection invalid | Default |
| 1 | Detection valid |  |

Detection size when $8.5^{\prime \prime} \times 13^{\prime \prime}$ document/paper is used.

|  | Employed unit | Destination | Document size | Set value |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | $0$ <br> (Invalid) | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ \text { (Valid) } \end{gathered}$ |
| Document | Document table/SPF | AB series (Japan) | FC (8.5" x 13") | B4 | B4 |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" x 14") | B4 | B4 |
|  |  |  | B4 | B4 | B4 |
|  |  | AB series | FC (8.5" $\times 13^{\prime \prime}$ ) | B4 | FC (8.5" $\times 13^{\prime \prime}$ ) |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | B4 | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | B4 | B4 | FC (8.5" x 13") |
|  |  | Inch series | FC (8.5" x 13") | LG (8.5" x 14") | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | B4 | WLT (11" x 17") | WLT (11" x 17") |
| Paper | Machine paper feed cassette | All destinations | - | Set with key | operations. |
|  | Manual paper feed tray | Japan (AB series) | FC (8.5" x 13") | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | LG (8.5" x 14") | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") |
|  |  |  | B4 | B4 | B4 |
|  |  | AB series | FC (8.5" x 13") | LG (8.5" x 14") | FC (8.5" x 13") |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" x 14") | LG (8.5" $\times 14$ ") | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | B4 | B4 | B4 |
|  |  | Inch series | FC (8.5" x 13") | LG (8.5" x 14") | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | LG (8.5" x 14") | LG (8.5" x 14") | FC (8.5" $\times 13$ ") |
|  |  |  | B4 | B4 | B4 |

A4/LT (8.5" $\times 11^{\prime \prime}$ ) detection enable/disable setup
In the inch series, Letter is detected as $A 4$; in the $A B$ series, $A 4$ is detected as Letter.

| Set value | Setup | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | Detection invalid | Default |
| 1 | Detection valid |  |

Detection size when A4/LT (8.5" $\times 11^{\prime \prime}$ ) document/paper is used.

|  | Employed unit | Destination | Document size | Set value |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | 0 <br> (Invalid) | $\begin{gathered} 1 \\ \text { (Valid) } \end{gathered}$ |
| Document | Document table/SPF | AB series | A4 | A4 | LT (8.5" $\times 11^{\prime \prime}$ ) |
|  |  |  | LT (8.5" $\times 11$ ") | A4 | LT (8.5" $\times 1{ }^{\prime \prime}$ ) |
|  |  | Inch series | A4 | LT (8.5" x 11") | A4 |
|  |  |  | LT (8.5" x 11") | LT (8.5" x 11") | A4 |
| Paper | Machine paper feed cassette | All destinations | - | Set with key operations. |  |
|  | Manual paper feed tray | All destinations | - | Regardless of the simulation setup. |  |

## 26-3

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the specifications of the auditor. Setting <br> must be made depending on the use condition of the <br> auditor. |
| Section | Auditor |
| Item | Specifications |

## Operation/procedure

Set the auditor.

| Sim26-3 AUDITOR SET |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| AUDITOR |  |
| (0:P10 1:VENDOR |  |
|  | 2:OTHER) |
|  | 0- 2] |


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ P10 | Built-in auditor mode | $0-2$ | 0 |
| $1:$ VENDOR | Coin vendor mode |  |  |
| $2:$ OTHER | Others |  |  |

## 26-5

| Purpose | Setting |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the count mode of the total counter and the <br> maintenance counter. |  |
| Item | Specifications | Counter |

## Operation/procedure

Used to set the count up number (1 or 2 ) when an A3/WLT paper passes through.
For the drum counter and the developer counter, double count is employed unconditionally.
(Target counter selection)

| 1:TOTAL COUNTER | Total |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2:MAINTE COUNTER | Maintenance |

Used to set the count up number of the selected counter.

| $1:$ SINGLE COUNT | Single count |
| :--- | :--- |
| $2:$ DOUBLE COUNT | Double count |


| Setting range | $1-2$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Default | 2 |

(Initial screen)

| Sim26-5 COUNT MODE |  |  |  |
| :--- | ---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:TOTAL COUNTER | 1 |  |  |
| 2:MAINTE COUNTER | 1 |  |  |
|  | 2 |  |  |

(Input screen)

| Sim26-5 COUNT MODE |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2:MAINTE COUNTER | 1 |
| (1:SINGLE COUNT |  |
| 2:DOUBLE | COUNT) |
| $\left[\begin{array}{llll}1- & 2\end{array}\right.$ | 1 |


| $\mid 26-6$ |
| :--- |
| Purpose Setting <br> Function (Purpose) Used to set the specifications depending on <br> the destination. <br> Item Specifications Destination |

## Operation/procedure

Select the destination.

| Sim26-6 DESTINATION |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DESTINATION | 0 |  |
| 10:JAPAN | $1:$ SEC |  |
| 2:SECL | 3: SEEG | $4:$ SUK |
| $1 / 3$ | [ | 0 |


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 : JAPAN | Japan | 0-13 | 0 |
| 1:SEC | SEC |  |  |
| 2:SECL | SECL |  |  |
| 3:SEEG | SEEG |  |  |
| 4 : SUK | SUK |  |  |
| 5:SCA | SCA |  |  |
| 6:SEF | SEF |  |  |
| 7: INEG | EX inch series |  |  |
| 8: ABEG | EX AB series |  |  |
| 9:INEF | EX inch series (FC) |  |  |
| 10: ABEF | EX AB series (FC) |  |  |
| 11: CHINESE | China |  |  |
| 12:TAIWAN | Taiwan |  |  |
| 13:SEEG2 | SEEG2 |  |  |

## 26-20

| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the job separator paper exit mode. |
| :--- | :--- | (Purpose)

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.

| Sim26-20 JOBSEP OUT |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| JOBSEP OUT MODE | 0 |
| (0:OFF 1:ON) |  |
| [ $0-1]$ | 0 |


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ FFF | Paper is discharged to No. 1 <br> paper exit port. | $0-1$ | 0 |
| 1:ON | Used to discharge paper to the <br> job separator tray (No. 2 paper <br> exit port). |  |  |

Note: Executable only when the finisher is not installed.

| $26-22$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the specification (language display) for the <br> destination. |
| Item | Specifications |

## Operation/procedure

Select the language to be used according to the table below.
This setup varies in connection with SIM 26-6 (Destination setup).


| Display items |  | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 : JAPANESE | 11 : GREEK | 0-20 | Depends on <br> the <br> destination. |
| 1 : ENG.US | 12 : POLISH |  |  |
| 2 : ENG.UK | 13 : HUNGARIAN |  |  |
| 3:FRENCH | 14: CZECH |  |  |
| 4 : GERMAN | 15 : RUSSIAN |  |  |
| 5:ITALIAN | 16:FINNISH |  |  |
| 6:DUTCH | 17:NORWEGIAN |  |  |
| 7 : SWEDISH | 18: DANISH |  |  |
| 8 : SPANISH | 19: CHINESE |  |  |
| 9: PORTUGUESE | 20:TAIWANESE |  |  |
| 10:TURKISH | - |  |  |

## 26-30

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the operation mode for CE mark. |
| Item | Specifications |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10 -key and press the [OK] key.
This setup varies in connection with SIM 26-6 (Destination setup).


| Display items | Setting range | Default |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Japan, SEC, SECL, <br> SCA, SEF, Taiwan | Others |
| $0:$ OFF | $0-1$ | 0 | 1 |
| $1:$ ON |  |  |  |

## 26-35

| Purpose | Setup |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the mode of trouble memory. |
| Item | Specifications |

Operation/procedure
Used to set whether the trouble history of SIM 22-4 is displayed as one-time trouble or as a number of times of troubles continuously occurred when two or more troubles of the same kind occurred.
Enter the set value with 10-key, and press [OK] key.


| Display item | Content | Set range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ ONCE | When two or more troubles <br> occur, only one is registered. | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1:$ ANY | All the troubles occurred are <br> registered. |  |  |

26-36

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether to stop when the maintenance life <br> is reached. |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.

| Sim26-36 MAINTESTOP |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| MAINTENANCE OVER <br> (0:STOP | 0 |
| 1:NON STOP) |  |
| $\left[\begin{array}{ccc} & 0- & 1]\end{array}\right.$ | 0 |


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ STOP | Stop | $0-1$ | 1 |
| $1:$ NON STOP | Non stop |  |  |

Note: Executable only with SRU (AR models).


| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether to stop when the developer life is <br> reached. |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ STOP | Stop | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1:$ NON STOP | Non stop |  |  |

Note: Executable only with CRU (DM models).

| $26-38$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether to stop when the drum life is <br> reached. |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ STOP | Stop | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1:$ NON STOP | Non stop |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

Note: Executable only with CRU (DM models).

| $26-41$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether the automatic magnification ratio <br> select (AMS) is always ON or not when setting the <br> pamphlet (center binding) function. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

AMS mode is set when setting the pamphlet (center binding) function.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ OFF | AMS is not set <br> automatically. | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1: 0 \mathrm{~N}$ | AMS is set automatically. |  |  |

## 26-46

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether to meet with the output direction of <br> images regardless of the mode when installing the <br> finisher. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $0: 0 \mathrm{OF}$ | Setting No | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1: 0 \mathrm{~N}$ | Setting Yes |  |  |

Note: Executable only when the finisher is installed.

| $26-50$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set whether to use the black/white reverse <br> function. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.

| Sim26-50 B/W REV. | Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{ll} \hline \text { B/W REVERSE } & 0 \\ \text { (0:ON } 1.0 \mathrm{OFF}) \end{array}$ | 0: ON | Enable | 0-1 | 0 |
|  | 1:OFF | Disable |  |  |


| $26-54$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the PWM duty (brightness) at the center <br> value of the LCD contrast. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the LCD contrast will be immediately changed and displayed.


## 26-57

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the model code. |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.

| Sim26-57 MACHINE |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MACHINE CODE | 1 |  |
| (1:AR-265G |  |  |
| $2:$ AR-265FG |  |  |
| $1 / 2\left[\begin{array}{lll} & 1-3\end{array}\right]$ | 1 |  |


| Display items | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1: A R-265 \mathrm{G}$ | $1-3$ | 1 |
| $2: A R-265 \mathrm{FG}$ |  |  |
| $3: A R-5127$ |  |  |

If a model different from CPM setup ( 22 cpm or 27 cpm ) of BOOT is set, a system error will occur after canceling the simulation.

| $26-60$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set enable/disable of the FAX mode key when <br> FAX is not installed. (When FAX is installed, the FAX <br> mode is enabled regardless of this setup.) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.
This setup varies in connection with SIM 26-6 (Destination setup).


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | JAPAN, SEC, SECL, SUK, SCA | Others |
| 0 : ON | Effective (The message with FAX uninstalled is displayed.) | 0-1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1:OFF | Disable (Error Beep) |  |  |  |

## 27

## 27-1

$\left.$| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set PC/MODEM communication trouble (U7- <br> O0) detection Yes/No. |
| Section | Communication (RIC/MODEM) |
| Item | Specifications | | Operation mode |
| :--- |
| (Common) | \right\rvert\,

## Operation/procedure

Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ OFF | In case of the communication <br> trouble, U7-00 is not displayed. | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1:$ ON | In case of the communication <br> trouble, U7-00 is displayed. |  |  |


| $27-5$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to enter the TAG No. of the copier. |
| Item | Data |

## Operation/procedure

Current memory is displayed in PRESENT column.
Enter a value (max. 8 digits) with the 10 -key, and press the [OK] key.
The input number is displayed instead of "NEW".
The set value is stored and "PRESENT" of LCD is revised.


## 30

| $30-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of sensors and detectors <br> in the sections other than the paper feed section of the <br> copier and the related circuit. (The operation of <br> sensors and detectors can be monitored with the <br> LCD.) |
| Section | Others |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The operating conditions of sensors and detectors in the different sections than the paper feed section of the machine are displayed. The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.


| PPD1H | PS paper detection 1 sensor |
| :--- | :--- |
| PPD1L | PS paper detection 2 sensor |
| PPD2 | Duplex sensor |
| POD1 | 1st paper exit paper out sensor |
| DVCH | Developing cartridge detection sensor |
| DRST | Drum initial detection sensor |
| DSWR1 | Interlock switch (side door) |
| SFTHP | Shifter home position sensor |
| POD2 | 2nd paper exit paper out sensor |
| TOPF | 2nd paper exit full detection sensor |
| DSWR0 | 2nd paper exit cover open/close detection sensor |
| LOEMP | 1st paper exit empty detection sensor |



## Operation/procedure

The operating conditions of sensors and detectors in the paper feed section of the machine are displayed. The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.


| PED1 | 1st cassette paper empty sensor |
| :--- | :--- |
| LUD1 | 1st cassette paper upper limit detection sensor |
| CD1 | 1st cassette empty sensor |
| PED2 | 2nd cassette paper empty sensor |
| LUD2 | 2nd cassette paper upper limit detection sensor |
| CD2 | 2nd cassette empty sensor |
| PFD2 | 2nd cassette paper pass sensor |
| DSWR2 | 2nd cassette right door detection sensor |
| MPED | Manual tray paper empty detection |
| MPLS1 | Manual tray length detection 1 |
| MPLS2 | Manual tray length detection 2 |
| MPLD1 | Manual feed paper length detection 1 |
| MPLD2 | Manual feed paper length detection 2 |

Width detection size of the manual feed tray (one of them is displayed.) A4/A3, LT/WLT, B5/B4, INV/LTR, A5/A4R, B5R, POSTCARD, EXTRA (At detection, highlighted)

## 40

| $40-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation of the manual paper feed <br> tray paper size detector and the related circuit. (The <br> operation of the manual paper feed tray paper size <br> detector can be monitored with the LCD.) |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Operation |
| Operation/procedure |  |

The status of sensors and detectors in the manual paper feed section is displayed. The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.


| MPLS1 | Manual tray length <br> detection 1 | MPLD1 | Manual feed paper <br> length detection 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MPLS2 | Manual tray length <br> detection 2 | MPLD2 | Manual feed paper <br> length detection 2 |

Width detection size of the manual feed tray (one of them is displayed.) A4/A3, LT/WLT, B5/B4, INV/LTR, A5/A4R, B5R, POSTCARD, EXTRA

| $40-2$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the manual paper feed tray paper width <br> detector detection level. |  |
| Section | Paper feed |  |
| Item | Operation |  |

## Operation/procedure

1) Set $A 3 / W$ Letter and fit the guide, then press the [OK] key.
2) Set $A 4 R / L e t t e r R$ and fit the guide, then press the [OK] key. When the intermediate position adjustment is not performed, press the [OK] key without changing the guide position.
3) Set to A5R/INVOICE $R$ and fit the guide, then press the [OK] key. When the intermediate position adjustment is not performed, press the [OK] key without changing the guide position.
4) Narrow the guide at minimum, press the [OK] key.
5) Set the paper detection width (+), and press the [OK] key.
6) Set the paper detection width (-), and press the [OK] key. If "FAILED" is displayed in procedure 1), 2), 3 ), or 4 ), it is NG of adjustment. Repeat the adjustment.
(Maximum position setting screen: AB series)

| Sim40-2 MB SENSOR |
| :--- |
| A3 PAPER SET |
| PRESS OK KEY |

(Intermediate position L setting screen: AB series)

(Maximum position setting screen: Inch series)

(Intermediate position L setting screen: INCH series)
Sim40-2 MB SENSOR
Sim40-2 MB SENSOR
LTR PAPER SET
LTR PAPER SET
PRESS OK KEY
PRESS OK KEY

If the intermediate position adjustment is not performed, press the [OK] key without changing the guide position.
(Intermediate position S setting (Intermediate position S setting screen: AB series) screen: INCH series)

Sim40-2 MB SENSOR
INVR PAPER SET
PRESS OK KEY

If the intermediate position adjustment is not performed, press the [OK] key without changing the guide position.
(Minimum position setting screen)

```
Sim40-2 MB SENSOR
MIN POSITION SET
PRESS OK KEY
```

(Paper width detection (+) setting screen)

(Paper width detection (-) setting screen)


The intermediate position adjustment setup YES/NO is displayed.
(Adjustment result screen)


Adjustment state is displayed.
Paper width detection (+) adjustment value

Paper width detection (-) adjustment value
Intermediate position L YES : LON
Intermediate position L NO : LOFF
Intermediate position S YES : SON
Intermediate position S NO : SOFF

| $40-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | The AD conversion value of manual feed width <br> detection is displayed. |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The AD conversion value of manual feed width detection is displayed.


## 41

| $41-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  |  |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the document size detection photo <br> sensor. |
| Section | Others |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

The operation status of the sensors and detectors in the original size detection section are displayed. The active sensors and detectors are highlighted.


| OCSW | Original cover state <br> Open: Highlighted <br> display <br> Close: Normal display | PD1 to 5 | Original sensor status <br> Without original: <br> Normal display <br> With original: <br> Highlighted display |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

For AB series, PD1-5 is displayed, for inch series, PD1-4.

| $41-2$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the detection level of the document size <br> photo sensor. |
| Section | Others |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Place an A3 (or WLT) document on the document table, and press [OK] key with the OC cover open.
The adjustment is performed and the result is displayed.
(Initial screen)
(Executing screen)


| OCSW | Original cover state <br> Open: Highlighted display <br> Close: Normal display | 1 to 5 | PD sensor detection <br> level |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

The value in [] shows the threshold value.
For AB series, 1-5 is displayed, for inch series, 1-4.
During execution, [EXEC] is highlighted.

| $41-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the light reception level and the <br> detection level of the original size detection photo <br> sensor. |
| Section | Others |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
The detection output level of each sensor is displayed in real time.

| Sim41-3 PD SENGIR |
| :---: |
| ITSEI |
| 1[000]043 2[000]094 |
| $3[001] 0474[0 C 6] 0 B 4$ |
| 5[0C5]0B3 |


| OCSW | Original cover state <br> Open: Highlighted display <br> Close: Normal display | 1 to 5 | PD sensor detection <br> level |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

The value in [ ] shows the threshold value of 20 degree detection adjustment.
For $A B$ series, $1-5$ is displayed, for inch series, PD1-4.


Set the OC cover at 20 degrees detection and press the [OK] key. (Initial screen)
(Executing screen)

| Sim41-4 $20^{\circ}$ | SENSOR |
| :--- | :--- |
|  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY | EXEC |


| Sim41-4 20 | SENSOR |
| :---: | :---: |
| ILSIU |  |
| 1[010]0A3 | 2[000]095 |
| 3[001]049 | 4[0C4]0B4 |
| 5[0]3]084 |  |

The detection output level of each sensor is displayed in real time.

| OCSW | Original cover state <br> Open: Highlighted <br> display <br> Close: Normal display | 1 to 5 | PD sensor <br> detection level |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

The value in [ ] shows the threshold value of 20 degree detection adjustment.
For $A B$ series, 1-5 is displayed, for inch series, 1-4.
During execution, [EXEC] is highlighted.

43

| $43-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the fusing temperature in each operation <br> mode. |
| Section | Fixing (Fusing) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

After the mode selection, enter the adjustment value and press the [OK] key.

| (Initial screen) | (Input screen) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sim43-1 FUSER TEMP. <br> 1:600dpi 185 <br> $2: 1200$ dpi 160 <br> $3:$ POST CARD 185 <br>  2 | Sim43-1 FUSER TEMP. <br> $2: 1200$ dpi 160 <br>   |


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1: 600 \mathrm{dpi}$ | 600 dpi | $155-190$ | 185 |
| $2: 1200 \mathrm{dpi}$ | 1200 dpi | $140-190$ | Disabled |
| $3:$ POST CARD | Postcard | $155-190$ | 185 |

43-10

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the paper feed cycle for postcard. |
| Section | Paper feed |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Input the set value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.


44-1

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to make various setups in each mode of process <br> control. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the adjustment value with the 10 -key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.


$\left.$| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| ENVIRONMENT ADJ. | Environmental correction <br> Valid/Invalid | $0-1$ | 1 |
| (0: Environmental |  |  |  |
| correction invalid |  |  |  |
| 1: Environmental |  |  |  |
| correction valid) |  |  |  |$\quad \right\rvert\,$| ( |
| :--- |

## 44-34

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the transfer current value. |

## Operation/procedure

To support an individual necessity in paper and the environment, it is variable in the range of 5 to 30 uA in the increment of 1 uA in each mode.
When changing +V 2 , check with +V 1 unchanged. If there is any trouble in the half tone image of graphics, keep the relationship between +V 1 and +V 2 at the default and change it.
When the image quality is deteriorated because the user selects the OHP mode and use other than the recommended OHP, decrease the transfer current to adjust deterioration of black background picture quality. If some of characters are not printed, increase the transfer current.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:+V1 (600) | 600dpi +V1 | 5-30 | 16 |
| 2:+V2 F (600) | 600dpi +V2 front surface | 5-30 | 20 |
| 3:+V2 R (600) | 600dpi +V2 back surface | 5-30 | 16 |
| 4:+V2 S-F (600) | 600dpi +V2 small size front | 5-30 | 22 |
| 5:+V2 S-R(600) | 600dpi +V2 small size back | 5-30 | 16 |
| 6:+V2 OHP (600) | 600dpi +V2OHP | 5-30 | 16 |
| 7:+V1 (1200) | 1200dpi +V1 | 5-30 | Disabled |
| 8:+V2 F (1200) | $1200 \mathrm{dpi}+\mathrm{V} 2$ front surface | 5-30 | Disabled |
| 9:+V2 R (1200) | 1200dpi +V2 back surface | 5-30 | Disabled |
| 10:+V2 S-F (1200) | 1200dpi +V2 small size front | 5-30 | Disabled |
| 11:+V2 S-R (1200) | $1200 \mathrm{dpi}+\mathrm{V} 2$ small size back | 5-30 | Disabled |
| 12:+V2 OHP (1200) | 1200dpi +V2OHP | 5-30 | Disabled |


| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Correction temperature setup when correcting the <br> ambient temperature. |

## Operation/procedure

Correction is performed when the temperature sensor installed to the MCU indicates $15^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or below.
The content of correction is to raise the DVB-Bias and Grid by -50 V .
The simulation allows to vary the correction threshold value in the range of 0 to $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.
If, however, the set temperature is increased, correction at a high voltage is performed in normal temperatures.


## 44-40

| Purpose | Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set the rotating time before toner supply. |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the set value with the 10-key, and the set value will be registered.


## 46



## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

(Executing screen)

(Auto adjustment)

| Display items | Content |  | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE | AE |  | 1-99 | 50 |
| 2:TEXT | Character | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 3:TEXT/PHOTO | Character/Photo | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 4: PHOTO | Photo | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO * | Super photo | Level 3.0 |  | Disabled |
| 6:AE (TS) | AE (TS) |  |  |  |
| 7:TEXT (TS) | Character (TS) | Level 3.0 |  | 50 |
| 8:TEXT/PHOTO (TS) | Character/Photo (TS) | Level 3.0 |  |  |

[^2]Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

* SUPER PHOTO (5:) cannot be executed. When [OK] or [START] key is pressed, a caution buzzer sounds. (Only the adjustment value can be entered.)

| $46-9$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. <br> (Character) |  |
| Item | Picture quality | Density |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

## (Initial screen)

(Input screen)

(Executing screen)


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:1.0(SHIFT) | Character level 1.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 22 |
| 2:1.0 (GAMMA) | Character level 1.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 44 |
| 3:2.0(SHIFT) | Character level 2.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 36 |
| 4:2.0 (GAMMA) | Character level 2.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 47 |
| 5:3.0(SHIFT) | Character level 3.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 6:3.0 (GAMMA) | Character level 3.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 7:4.0(SHIFT) | Character level 4.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 61 |
| 8:4.0 (GAMMA) | Character level 4.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 55 |
| 9:5.0(SHIFT) | Character level 5.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 72 |
| 10:5.0 (GAMMA) | Character level 5.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 60 |
| 11:TS 1.0(SHIFT) | Character (TS) level 1.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 22 |
| 12:TS 1.0 (GAMMA) | Character (TS) level 1.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 44 |
| 13:TS 2.0(SHIFT) | Character (TS) level 2.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 36 |
| 14:TS 2.0(GAMMA) | Character (TS) level 2.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 47 |
| 15:TS 3.0(SHIFT) | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \begin{array}{l} \text { Character (TS) level } 3.0 \\ \text { (shift q'ty) } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 1-99 | 50 |
| 16:TS 3.0 (GAMMA) | Character (TS) level 3.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 17:TS 4.0(SHIFT) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Character (TS) level } 4.0 \\ & \text { (shift a'tv) } \end{aligned}$ | 1-99 | 61 |
| 18:TS 4.0 (GAMMA) | Character (TS) level 4.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 55 |
| 19:TS 5.0(SHIFT) | Character (TS) level 5.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 72 |
| 20:TS 5.0 (GAMMA) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Character (TS) level } 5.0 \\ & \text { (slant) } \end{aligned}$ | 1-99 | 60 |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

46-10

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. <br> (Character/Photo) |
| Item | Picture quality |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:1.0 (SHIFT) | Character/Photo level 1.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 30 |
| 2:1.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo level 1.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 37 |
| 3:2.0 (SHIFT) | Character/Photo level 2.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 40 |
| 4:2.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo level 2.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 43 |
| 5:3.0 (SHIFT) | Character/Photo level 3.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 6:3.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo level 3.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 7:4.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo level 4.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 57 |
| 8:4.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo level 4.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 61 |
| 9:5.0 (SHIFT) | Character/Photo level 5.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 64 |
| 10:5.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo level 5.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 66 |
| 11:TS 1.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo (TS) level 1.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 30 |
| 12:TS 1.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo (TS) level 1.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 37 |
| 13:TS 2.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo (TS) level 2.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 40 |
| 14:TS 2.0(GAMMA) | Character/Photo (TS) level 2.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 43 |
| 15:TS 3.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo (TS) level 3.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 16:TS 3.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo (TS) level 3.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 50 |
| 17:TS 4.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo (TS) level 4.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 57 |
| 18:TS 4.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo (TS) level 4.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 61 |
| 19:TS 5.0(SHIFT) | Character/Photo (TS) level 5.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 64 |
| 20:TS 5.0 (GAMMA) | Character/Photo (TS) level 5.0 (slant) | 1-99 | 66 |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

| $46-11$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust individually the copy exposure level. <br> (Photo) |  |
| Item | Picture quality | Density |

Operation/procedure
Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

(Input screen)
(Executing screen)


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:1.0(SHIFT) | Photo level 1.0 (shift q'ty) | 1-99 | 32 |
| 2:1.0 (GAMMA) | Photo level 1.0 (slant) |  | 50 |
| 3:2.0(SHIFT) | Photo level 2.0 (shift q'ty) |  | 41 |
| 4:2.0 (GAMMA) | Photo level 2.0 (slant) |  | 50 |
| 5:3.0 (SHIFT) | Photo level 3.0 (shift q'ty) |  | 50 |
| 6:3.0 (GAMMA) | Photo level 3.0 (slant) |  | 50 |
| 7:4.0(SHIFT) | Photo level 4.0 (shift q'ty) |  | 56 |
| 8:4.0 (GAMMA) | Photo level 4.0 (slant) |  | 61 |
| 9:5.0(SHIFT) | Photo level 5.0 (shift q'ty) |  | 62 |
| 10:5.0 (GAMMA) | Photo level 5.0 (slant) |  | 66 |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

## 46-12

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX exposure level adjustment (batch) |

## Operation/procedure

Shading is performed to turn on the copy LED.
The current exposure value of "Normal character, Auto exposure" mode is displayed.
Enter an adjustment value of 2 digits with the 10 -key and press the START key, and the entered value will be set to all the modes and the self print will be made in the normal size.
Exposure adjustment value table

| Mode | AE | Photo | Exposure adjustment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| STD <br> (Standard character) | Auto | ON | - |
|  | Manual |  |  |
|  | Auto | OFF | Individual adjustment enable (46-13 to 16) |
|  | Manual |  |  |
| Fine (Small character) | Auto | ON |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |
|  | Auto | OFF |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |
| S-fine <br> (Fine) | Auto | ON |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |
|  | Auto | OFF |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |
| U-fine (Super fine) | Auto | ON |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |
|  | Auto | OFF |  |
|  | Manual |  |  |

When initializing each data: 50
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 46-13 to 16

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX exposure level adjustment (individual) |

## Operation/procedure

The FAX exposure level can be adjusted separately for each mode by specifying a sub code. Since selection of Auto/Manual and Photo ON/ OFF is allowed separately for each mode, adjustments of 14 patterns in total can be made.
(Refer to 46-12, "Exposure adjustment table".)

| Sub code | Mode |
| :---: | :--- |
| 13 | STD (normal character) |
| 14 | Fine (small character) |
| 15 | S-fine (super fine) |
| 16 | U-fine (super fine) |

Shading is performed to turn on the copy LED.
The current exposure value of the selected mode is displayed.
Enter the 2-digit adjustment value with the 10 -key pad and push START key. The entered value is set for the specified mode, and the self print is made with the same magnification ratio for the mode.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 46-18

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the copy contrast. (Inclination) |
| Item | Picture quality |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

(Auto adjustment)

| Display items | Content |  | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE | AE |  | 1-99 | 50 |
| 2:TEXT | Character | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 3:TEXT/ РHOTO | Character/Photo | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 4: PHOTO | Photo | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 5:SUPER PHOTO * | Super photo | Level 3.0 |  | Disabled |
| 6:AE (TS) | AE(TS) |  |  | 50 |
| 7:TEXT (TS) | Character (TS) | Level 3.0 |  |  |
| 8:TEXT/PHOTO (TS) | Character/Photo (TS) | Level 3.0 |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

* SUPER PHOTO (5:) cannot be executed.

When [OK] or [START] key is pressed, a caution buzzer sounds.
(Only the adjustment value can be entered.)

| $46-19$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to change the image quality in the exposure <br> mode. |
| Item | Picture quality |

Operation/procedure
Select the mode with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.
Enter the adjustment value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.
Pressing the [BACK] key returns to the mode selection.
Auto exposure mode

- When SIM 26-6 (Destination setup) is changed from EX to Japan, the setup value becomes 1 (Default: Japan). If, on the contrary, it is changed from Japan to EX, the set value becomes 2 (Default: EX)
- If the auto exposure mode setup value is changed, the setup value of SIM 46-30 (AE limit setup) is reset to the default value.
(Initial screen)
(Input screen)

| Sim46-19 AE MODE |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| $1: A E$ MODE | 1 |
| 2:AE STOP (COPY) | 0 |
| $3: A E S T O P(F A X)$ | 0 |
| $1 / 2$ | 1 |


| Sim46-19 AE MODE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE MODE | 1 |  |
| (1:EXPOSURE |  |  |
| $2: T O N E R)$ |  |  |
| $\left[\begin{array}{lll}{[1-} & 2\end{array}\right]$ | 1 |  |


| Display items | Content | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1:AE MODE <br> (1: EXPOSURE <br> 2:TONER) | Auto exposure mode <br> (1: Priority on Image quality, <br> 2: Priority on toner consumption) | 2 |
| $\begin{aligned} & 2: \text { AE STOP (COPY) } \\ & \text { (0:FIXED } \\ & 1: \text { REAL TIME) } \end{aligned}$ | Auto exposure STOP mode (COPY) <br> (0: Fixed, 1: Real-time) | 0 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3:AE STOP (FAX) } \\ & \text { (0:FIXED } \\ & 1: \text { REAL TIME) } \end{aligned}$ | Auto exposure STOP mode (FAX) <br> (0: Fixed, 1: Real-time) | 0 |
| $\begin{aligned} & 4: \text { AE STOP (SCAN) } \\ & \text { (0:FIXED } \\ & 1: \text { REAL TIME) } \end{aligned}$ | Auto exposure STOP mode (SCANNER) <br> (0: Fixed, 1: Real-time) | 0 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5:1200dpi PHOTO } \\ & \text { (1:SOFT } \\ & 2: \text { HARD }) \end{aligned}$ | 1200dpi photo mode (Countermeasures for claims on dither) <br> (1: Soft mode, 2: Hard mode) | Disabled |


| $46-20$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to correct SPF exposure. |
| Item | Picture quality |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.
Enter the adjustment value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.
Pressing the [BACK] key returns to the mode selection.
(Initial screen)
(Input screen)

| Sim46-20 SPF EXP.  <br> 1:SFR EXPOSURE 53 <br> 2: RSPF EXPOSURE 53 <br>   | $\begin{array}{r} \frac{\text { Sim46-20 SPF EXP. }}{\text { 1:SPF EXPOSURE }} 5 \\ \\ {\left[\begin{array}{lll} 1-99] & 50 \end{array}\right.} \end{array}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| 1:SPF EXPOSURE | SPF | 1-99 | 53 |
| 2:RSPF EXPOSURE | RSPF |  |  |

## 46-30

## Purpose Setting

Function Used to set the AE limit.
(Purpose)

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the 10-key and press the [OK] key.
Enter the adjustment value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.
Pressing the [BACK] key returns to the mode selection.
If SIM 26-6 (Destination setup) and SIM46-19 (Auto exposure mode) are changed, this setup is also changed to the default value accordingly.

| (Initial screen) | (Input screen) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sim46-30 AE LIMITTE <br> $1: \mathrm{AE}$ 0 <br> $2: \mathrm{AE}(\mathrm{TS})$ 0 <br>  1 <br>  1 | $\frac{\text { Sim46-30 AE L }}{1: \mathrm{AE}}$ $[0-31$ | ITTE 0 0 |
| Display items | Setting range | Default |
| 1:AE | 0-31 | 0 |
| 2:AE(TS) |  |  |

48

| $48-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the copy mode magnification ratio (main <br> scanning direction, sub scanning direction). |
| Section | Image processing |
| Item | Picture quality |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ F-R (AUTO) | Main scanning magnification <br> ratio adjustment (auto) | - | - |
| $2:$ F-R | Main scanning magnification <br> ratio adjustment | $1-99$ | 50 |
| $3:$ SCAN | Sub scanning magnification <br> ratio adjustment |  | 60 |
| $4:$ SPF (SIDE1) | SPF surface sub scan <br> magnification ratio | 50 |  |
| $5:$ SPF (SIDE2 ) | SPF back surface sub scan <br> magnification ratio |  |  |
| $6:$ DUPLEX | DUPLEX sub scanning <br> magnification ratio adjustment |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTER-
RUPT] key is inhibited.

| $48-2$ |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the scanner mode magnification ratio <br> (main/sub scanning direction). |  |  |
| Section | Image processing |  |  |
| Item | Picture quality |  |  |
| Operation/procedure |  |  |  |

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.
Input the offset for the copy adjustment.


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1:$ F-R | Main scanning magnification <br> ratio adjustment | $1-99$ | 50 |
| $2:$ SCAN | Sub scanning magnification <br> ratio adjustment |  |  |
| $3:$ SPF (SIDE1) | SPF surface sub scan <br> magnification ratio |  |  |
| $4:$ SPF (SIDE2 ) | SPF back surface sub scan <br> magnification ratio |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode. Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

| $48-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the lead edge/sub scan magnification <br> ratio automatically. |
| Item | Operation |

Open the OC cover, and put the lead edge/sub scan automatic adjustment chart on the OC. (Keep the OC cover open.)
Place the chart correctly on the OC reference position. (If not, a correct adjustment cannot be made.)
If the adjustment is normally completed, the adjusted value is displayed and written into the EEPROM. In case of an abnormality, "ERR" is displayed and the value is not written into the EEPROM.
If no adjustment is made because of an abnormality, "---" is displayed. (Initial screen)
(Execution screen)

## Sim48-3 READ AUTO <br> PRESS OK KEY EXEC

(Normal end screen)

| Sim48-3 |  |  | READ | AUTO |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RRC-A | $\left[\begin{array}{c}32\end{array}\right]$ |  |  |  |
| OC Center | $\left[\begin{array}{cc}53\end{array}\right]$ |  |  |  |
| MirSpeed | $\left[\begin{array}{c}58\end{array}\right]$ |  |  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY | EXEC |  |  |  |


(Abnormal end screen)

| Sim48-3 | READ |
| :--- | :--- |
| RRC-AUTO | $[$ ERR] |
| OC Center | $[$ ERR $]$ |
| MirSpeed | $[---]$ |
| PRESS OK KEY | EXEC |


| $48-8$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX magnification ratio adjustment (read) |
| Related soft <br> SW | SW76-1 to 8, SW77-1 to 8 |

## Operation/procedure

Adjust and set FAX document read magnification ratio, read and print the document.

| Adjustment magnification ratio | Adjustment <br> range | Adjustment <br> unit |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| OC read main scanning <br> magnification ratio |  |  |
| OC read sub scanning <br> magnification ratio | $1-128-$ | $0.1 \%$ <br> increment |
| SPF read main scanning <br> magnification ratio | $255 \%$ |  |
| SPF read sub scanning <br> magnification ratio |  |  |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $48-9$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX magnification ratio adjustment (print) |
| Related soft SW | SW78-1 to 8, SW79-1 to 8 |

## Operation/procedure

After the adjustment/setting of FAX print magnification ratio, read and print the document

| Adjustment magnification ratio | Adjustment <br> range | Adjustment <br> unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main scanning magnification ratio | $1-128-$ | $0.1 \%$ |
| Sub scanning magnification ratio | $255 \%$ | increment |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 48-10

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX auto reduction magnification ratio (print). |
| Related soft SW | SW25-1 to 4 |

## Operation/procedure

Set the FAX auto reduction magnification ratio (0 to 15\%).
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the copy lead edge position. |  |
| Item | Picture quality | Image position |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.

When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.
(Initial screen) (Input screen) (Executing screen)


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default | Remark |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 1:RRC-A | Original scan start position adjustment | $1-99$ | 43 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 2:RRC-B | Lead edge cancel adjustment (Main cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Main cassette is specified. |  |
| 3:RRC-MANUAL | Lead edge cancel adjustment (Manual feed cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Manual feed cassette is <br> specified. |  |
| 4:RRC-OPTION | Lead edge cancel adjustment (Option cassette) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: 2nd cassette is specified. |  |
| 5:RRC-DUPLEX | Lead edge cancel adjustment (back of the machine) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 6:DEN-B | Rear edge void adjustment | $1-99$ | 30 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 7: DEN-B-DUP | Rear edge void adjustment (Duplex) | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 8:SIDE VOID | Left edge void adjustment (First print surface) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 9:SIDE VOID-DUP | Left edge void adjustment (Duplex) | $1-99$ | 18 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |
| 10: LOSS (OC) | Image loss quantity adjustment | $1-5$ | 3 | Tray selection: Made by user. |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

| $50-5$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the print image position (top margin) on <br> the print paper in the print mode. |
| Item | Picture quality | Print area |  |
| :--- |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default | Remark |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1:TRAY1 | 1st cassette | $0-99$ | 53 | Tray selection: <br> 1st cassette is <br> specified. |
| 2: OPTION | Option cassette | $1-99$ |  | Tray selection: <br> 2nd cassette is <br> specified. |
| 3:MANUAL | Manual feed |  | Tray selection: <br> Manual feed <br> cassette is <br> specified. |  |
| 4: DUPLEX | Back print |  | Tray selection: <br> Made by user. |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode. Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

## 50-6

| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the print image position (top margin) on <br> print paper in the copy mode. (SPF/RSPF) |  |
| Item | Picture quality |  | Image position $\quad$.

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

| (Initial screen) | (Input screen) (Ex | (Executing screen) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sim50-6 SPF  <br> 1:SDDE1 $\mathbf{5 0}$ <br> 2:SIDE2 50 <br> 3:DEN-B 50 <br> $1 / 4$ 50 | Ready to copy, $\qquad$国 $98 \times 11 \mathrm{R}$ <br> - 0 <br> חITID <br> -1010 <br> - 1 国 $8 \times 11 \mathrm{R}$ |  |  |
| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| 1:SIDE1 | Surface original scan start position adjustment value | 1-99 | 50 |
| 2 : SIDE2 | Back original scan start position set value | 1-99 | 50 |
| 3: END EDGE | Rear edge void adjustment value (SPF) | 1-99 | 36 |
| 4:LOSS (SIDE1) | Surface image loss quantity set value | 1-5 | 3 |
| 5:LOSS (SIDE2) | Back image loss quantity set value | 1-5 | 3 |
| 6 :REARLOS (SIDE1) | Surface rear edge image loss quantity set value | 1-5 | 3 |
| 7:REARLOS (SIDE2) | Back rear edge image loss quantity set value | 1-5 | 3 |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

## 50-8

The adjustments on the machine side must have been normally completed.

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX lead edge adjustment (read) |
| Related soft SW | SW44-5 to 8, SW45-5 to 8 |
| Operation/procedure |  |

Adjust and set FAX document read lead edge position, read and print the document.

|  | Adjustment position | Adjustment range | Adjustment <br> unit |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| A | OC read lead edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 lines |
| B | OC read left edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 dots |
| C | OC read rear edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 lines |
| D | OC read right edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 dots |
| E | SPF read lead edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 lines |
| F | SPF read left edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 dots |
| G | SPF read rear edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 lines |
| H | SPF read right edge position | $43-50-57$ lines | 8 dots |



Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $50-9$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX lead edge adjustment (print) |
| Related soft SW | SW74-1 to 4, SW75-5 to 8 |

## Operation/procedure

After the adjustment/setting of FAX print lead edge position, read and print the document.

|  | Adjustment position | Adjustment range | Adjustment <br> unit |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| A | Lead edge position | $43-50-57$ | 16 lines |
| B | Left edge position | $43-50-57$ | 16 dots |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| 50-10 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| Function (Purpose) | Used to adjust the print image center position. (Adjustment can be made for each paper feed section.) |  |
| Section | Image processing (ICU) |  |
| Item | Picture quality | Image position |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.

When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.

| Sim50-10 | PRT. CENTER |
| :--- | ---: |
| 1:BYPASS | 50 |
| 2:TRAY1 | 50 |
| 3:TRAY2 | 50 |
| 1/2 | 50 |


(Executing screen)


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1: BYPASS | Manual feed | 1-99 | 50 | Tray selection: Manual feed cassette is specified. |
| $2: T R A Y 1$ | 1st cassette |  |  | Tray selection: 1st cassette is specified. |
| 3:TRAY2 | 2nd cassette |  |  | Tray selection: 2nd cassette is specified. |
| 4:TRAY3 | 3rd cassette |  |  | Tray selection: 3rd cassette is specified. |
| $5:$ TRAY4 | 4th cassette |  |  | Tray selection: 4th cassette is specified. |
| 6: DUPLEX | Back print |  |  | Tray selection: Made by user. |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.
Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited

| $50-12$ |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Purpose | Adjustment |  |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the print image center position. <br> (Adjustment can be made for each document mode.) |  |
| Section | Image processing |  |
| Item | Picture quality |  |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $1: 0 \mathrm{O}$ | OC | $1-99$ | 50 |
| $2:$ SPF (SIDE1) | SPF front surface |  |  |
| $3:$ SPF (SIDE2 $)$ | SPF back surface |  |  |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode. Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited

51

| $51-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the OPC drum separation pawl ON <br> time. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Enter the adjustment value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.


| Display items | Setting range | Default |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $1: 600 \mathrm{dpi}$ | $1-99$ | 50 |
| $2: 1200 \mathrm{dpi}$ |  | Disabled |


| $51-2$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the contact pressure of paper onto the <br> resist roller in each section (copier paper feed section, <br> duplex paper feed section, SPF paper feed section). <br> (When the print image position varies greatly for the <br> paper or when a lot of paper jam troubles occur, the <br> adjustment is required.) |
| Section | Paper transport (Discharge/Switchback/Transport) |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Select the mode with the arrow keys, enter the adjustment value with the 10-key, and press the [OK] key.
When the [START] key is pressed, a print is made and the display returns to the mode selection menu.


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default | Remark |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1: BYPASS | Manual feed | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> Manual feed <br> cassette is <br> specified. |
| 2:TRAY1 | 1st cassette | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> 1st cassette is <br> specified. |
| $3:$ TRAY2 | 2nd cassette | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> 2nd cassette is <br> specified. |
| 4:TRAY3 | 3rd cassette | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> 3rd cassette is <br> specified. |
| 5:TRAY4 | 4th cassette | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> 4th cassette is <br> specified. |
| 6: DUPLEX | Back print | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> Made by user. |
| $7:$ SPF (SIDE1) | SPF front <br> surface | $1-99$ | 50 | Tray selection: <br> Made by user. |


| Display items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $8:$ SPF (SIDE2 ) | SPF back <br> surface |  |  | Tray selection: <br> Made by user. |

Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode. Use of [SPECIAL FUNCTION] key, [JOB STATUS] key, and [INTERRUPT] key is inhibited.

| $51-8$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Setting |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to set to disable the operation of the separation <br> pawl of the photoconductor drum. |
| Section | Image process (Photoconductor/Developing/Transfer/ <br> Cleaning) |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Enter the adjustment value with the 10-key and press the [OK] key, and the entered value is registered.


| Display items | Content | Setting range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| $0:$ ON | Enable | $0-1$ | 0 |
| $1:$ OFF | Disable |  |  |

## 51-9

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust ON/OFF timing of the separation <br> voltage. |
| Item | Adjustment |

Operation/procedure
Used to adjust ON/OFF timing of the separation voltage.
(Initial screen)

(Input screen)


| Display <br> items | Content | Setting <br> range | Default |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 1:SHV ON | Separation voltage ON timing <br> *Transfer V2ON reference <br> (synchronized with the <br> adjustment value of 50) <br> $25-90$ <br> 2: SHV OFFSeparation voltage OFF timing <br> *Transfer V2OFF reference <br> (synchronized with the <br> adjustment value of 50) | $50-90$ | 75 |


| $53-8$ | Purpose Adjustment <br> Function <br> (Purpose) Used to adjust the mirror unit SPF scan position <br> automatically. <br> For the SPF scan position auto adjustment, the mirror <br> unit is shifted to 11mm before the SPF glass cover <br> edge and is moved by self-boost, and images are <br> scanned in each step, and the position from the glass <br> cover edge is automatically detected. <br> [Adjustment value] <br> Default: $50 \quad$ Setting range: 1 to 99 <br> Adjustment unit $1=$ about 0.127 mm |
| :--- | :--- |

## Operation/procedure

Keep the OC cover open for execution of this test command.
If the adjustment is normally completed, the adjusted value is displayed and written into the EEPROM.
If the adjustment is abnormal, "ERR" is displayed and the value is not written into the EEPROM.
For that which is not adjusted because of abnormality, "---" is displayed.
(Initial screen)

| Sim53-8 SPF AUTO |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY |  |
|  |  |

(Executing screen)

"EXEC" is highlighted during execution.
(Normal end screen)

| Sim53-8 SPF AUTO |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| SPF STOP ADJ $\quad[47]$ |  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY |  |  |
|  |  |  |

(Abnormal end display)


## 61

| $61-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to test the operation of the LSU. |
| Section | LSU |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Pressing the [OK] key performs the LSU test.
Used to set the LSU to ON state and check that the sync signal (HSYNC/) is outputted or not.
After operation for 30 sec , the result is displayed. (Interruption cannot be made for 5 sec after starting the operation.)
(Initial screen)
(Executing screen)


Interruption is inhibited during execution. During execution, [EXEC] is highlighted.
(Result screen/Normal) (Result screen/Abnormal)

| Sim61-1 LSU CHECK |  |
| :--- | ---: |
|  |  |
| COMPLETE |  |


| Sim61-1 LSU CHECK |  |
| :--- | ---: |
|  |  |
| ERROR |  |
|  |  |


| $63-1$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/setting/operation data output/check <br> (display/print) |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the result of shading correction. (The <br> shading correction data are displayed.) |
| Section | Scanner (Exposure) |
| Item | Operation |
| Operation/procedure |  |

Pressing the [OK] key performs shading, and displays the result (center pixel).


## 63-7

| Purpose | Adjustment |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to adjust the SPF white correction start pixel <br> position automatically. <br> This adjustment is performed after the lens unit is <br> replaced. |
| Section | Scanner |
| Item | Operation |

## Operation/procedure

Set the SPF unit OPEN, and press the [OK] key.
[ ] indicates the order number of the pixel of the white sheet for SPF exposure correction in the SPF position.
If the adjustment is normally completed, "COMPLETE" is displayed and data are written into the EEPROM.
In case of an abnormality, "ERROR" is displayed and no data is written into the EEPROM.
The SPF white correction start pixel = Displayed pixel position - 34
If the simulation is executed with the SPF unit closed, an error is resulted.
(Initial screen)

| Sim63-7 SPF ADJ. |
| :--- |
| WHITE ADJUST |
|  |
| PRESS OK KEY |

(Executing screen)
Sim63-7 SPF ADJ. WHITE ADJUST

Interruption is inhibited
during execution.
During execution,
[EXEC] is highlighted.
(Initial screen with the execution result displayed)
Normal end screen
Abnormal end screen

| Sim63-7 SPF ADJ. |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| WHITE ADJUST |  |  |
| COMPLETE |  |  |
| [160] |  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY | EXEC |  |


| Sim63-7 SPF ADJ. |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| WHITE ADJUST |  |  |
| ERROR |  |  |
| $\left[\begin{array}{lll}{[\quad 0}\end{array}\right.$ |  |  |
| PRESS OK KEY | EXEC |  |


| 64-1 |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Operation test/check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Self print <br> Key input = 1 <br> Self print is performed in the 2-by-4 mode (2-line print <br> and 4-line non-print). <br> Key input = 2 <br> Grid print is performed. (1cm, 1-dot width WLT/A3 print <br> (A3 main scan, WLT sub scan)) |
| Section | Printer |
| Item | Operation |

Operation/procedure
Enter a figure with the 10-key.
[When key input $=1$ ]
Self print is performed in the 2-by-4 mode
Since scanning is not performed, if a document is set on the SPF, the START key is invalid.

* Duplex print is invalid.


## [When key input $=2$ 2]

Grid print is performed. (1cm, 1-dot width WLT/A3 print (A3 main scan, WLT sub scan))
If the IMC board is not installed, key input cannot be made.

* Duplex print is allowed.


## [7-seg LED display]

1: Self print (2-by-4) mode
2: Grid print mode
Pressing the [START] key makes a print by 2 by 4 mode. After completion of printing, the menu returns to the initial menu.
Pressing the [CA] key cancels the simulation mode.
(Input screen)
(Executing screen)


Note: Executable only when the IMC board is installed.

## 65

## 65-5

| Function <br> (Purpose) | Used to check the operation panel. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Section | Operation (screen/operation) |

Section Operation (screen/operation)
Operation/procedure
Check the key input of the operation panel.
Press the keys displayed on LCD sequentially.
After completion of all key entries, "COMPLETE" is displayed.
(1)
(2)
(3)
Sim65-5 KEY CHECK

| Sim65-5 KEY CHECK |
| :--- |
| COMPLETE |

## 66-1

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX related soft SW setting |

## Operation/procedure

Display FAX software SW on LCD, and set/change those with 10-key.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-2

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Initial set for the value of the FAX soft SW |

## Operation/procedure

Used to clear the FAX-related soft switches except for the line signal adjustment value and the machine adjustment value and to set default values (which differ depending on the country code separately entered.)
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-3$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAX PWB memory check |

## Operation/procedure

Read/write can be checked for FAX PWB memory.
The check result is displayed separately for each memory.

1. Memory to be checked

| DRAM |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SRAM |  |  |
| Flash ROM | Program area | SUM check only |
|  | Memory area |  |
| Option memory | The memory size follows the <br> automatically detected value. |  |
| PAGE |  |  |

2. Detailed procedure

1 " 55 H " is written to all the addresses of each memory, and the address data are read in sequence to check that they were properly written.
2 "AAH" is written to all the addresses of each memory, and the address data are read in sequence to check that they were properly written.
3 " 00 H " is written to all the addresses of each memory, and the address data are read in sequence to check that they were properly written.
4 Perform checks $1-3$ sequentially. If there is no abnormality, it is "OK." If there is any abnormality, "NG" is notified to the error address.
5 After completion of check, the memory is returned to the initial state.
(CPU is not reset)
Interruption cannot be made during operation.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-4$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Signal send mode |
| Related soft <br> SW | SW5-5 to 8 (signals send level) |
|  | SW23-1 to 4 (RBT ON time) |
| SW23-5 to 8 (RBT OFF time) |  |
| SW43-1 to 5 (DTMF signal send time) |  |

## Operation/procedure

By setting the message No., the signal is sent to the line and the speaker of the body. (The signal is continuously sent until the interruption command is provided by pressing the [BACK] key.)
The signal send level can be selected from $0 d B$ or the soft SW set value. However, the level setup is not required for 01, $31-35$, the selection may does not appear. After completion of the mode, the signal send level is returned to the soft SW set value before execution of the mode.

| Signal number | Send signal | Send level Selection menu |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 | Signal not send | None |
| 26 | 7EH Flag signal | Yes |
| 27 to 30 | Tone signal | Yes |
| 31 | Pseudo-ringer sound ([ON HOOK] key ON) | None |
| 32 | Voice message (no sound) | None |
|  | Under the state where the ring back tone can be sent to the line, keep the sound composition IC volume to 0. |  |
| 33 | Ring back tone (no sound) | None |
|  | Under the state where the ring back tone can be sent to the line, keep the G/A volume to 0 . |  |
| 34 | Dial pulse (make) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1: OdB } \\ & \text { 2: Soft SW } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | Maintain the make state with keeping the condition to be able to send to the dial pulse line. |  |
| 35 | Dial pulse (break) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1: OdB } \\ & \text { 2: Soft SW } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | Maintain the break state with keeping the condition to be able to send to the dial pulse line. |  |
| Other than the above | FFH | Yes |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-6$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Printing the confidential password |

## Operation/procedure

The confidential ID table (confidential BOX numbers, confidential BOX names, and confidential password) is printed.
The confidential data of My company mode is printed separately.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-7$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Print the screen memory contents |

## Operation/procedure

Used to input all image data (including confidential reception data, remote send image, not-sent image) stored in image memory of the FAX section.

The output image is remained even after outputting.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed


## Operation/procedure

By setting the message No., the sound message is sent to the line and the speaker of the body. (The message is repeated until the interruption command is provided by pressing the [BACK] key.)

| Message <br> number | Voice message |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1 | "Hold the line a minute, please send fax." <br> (TEL/FAX voice response) |
| 2 | "Hold the line a minute." <br> (TEL/FAX voice response) |
| 3 | "Not around here, please send fax." <br> (TEL/FAX voice response) |
| 4 | "Ding Dong" <br> (Sound delivered when switching to remote reception) |

Message No. 4 can be heard by an external telephone speaker.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-10

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Image data memory clear |

Operation/procedure
Used to clear all image data (including confidential reception data) stored in image memory of the FAX section.
The management table is also cleared (initialized) at the same time. Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-11

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | 300bps signals send |

## Operation/procedure

By setting the signal number, the specified signal is delivered to the line at the speed of 300 bps . (The signal is continuously sent until the interruption command is provided by pressing the [BACK] key.)
The signal send level can be selected from 0 dB or the soft SW set value.

The signal send level is returned to the soft SW set value before execution of the mode after completion of the mode.

| Number | Signal | Number | Signal |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | No signal (CML ON) | 4 | 00000 |
| 2 | 11111 | 5 | 010101 |
| 3 | 11110 | 6 | 00001 |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-13

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function | Send test and adjustment of the dial pulse and |
| (Purpose) | DTMF signal. |
| Related soft SW | SW53-1 to 4 (DTMF high group end level) |
|  | SW53-5 to 8 (DTMF low group send level) |
|  | SW67-1 to 4 (DP 10PPS make time) |
|  | SW67-5 to 8 (DP 10PPS make time) |

## Operation/procedure

The send test of dial pulse and DTMF signal is performed and the make time adjustment of dial pulse and the DTMF signal send level adjustment are performed if necessary.

1. Dial pulse (10pps) send test
2. Dial pulse (20pps) send test

- Used to set the make time. By performing the test, the registered dial pulse of max. 100 digits can be sent from the line.
- When "*" and "\#" are included in the registered dial number, they are disregarded and the number is not processed as a dial.
- The make time set in the dial test is written into the corresponding soft SW.
- Default: 1234567890

Operate the $[\leftarrow][\rightarrow]$ key in DP dial selection menu to switch. (Time before pulse delivery can be changed as $2 \mathrm{sec} \rightarrow 4 \mathrm{sec} \rightarrow 8 \mathrm{sec}$.)

## 3. DTMF signal send test

- Set the signal send level to OdB or the soft SW set value.

Used to set the high level group and the low level group of DTMF signal send level. By executing the test, DTMF signal is sent from the line to a recorded dial number of max. 100 digits.

- The high group/low group value of the DTMF signal send level set in the dial test is written into the corresponding soft SW.
- Default: 123456789 * 0 \#

In the PB dial select menu, press $[\leftarrow][\rightarrow]$ keys to select.
Pressing the [CLEAR] key during the operation clears the input value and returns to the value input menu.

- Max. 100 digits can be assigned to each dial (0-9, *, \#). While the default value is displayed at first, a desired value can be entered and the entered value is stored on the FAX side until the menu is canceled.
- After completion of the mode, the signal send level is returned to the soft SW set value before execution of the mode.

| Make time | 1 ms for input value of 1. Adjust so that the dial pulse <br> make rate is within 33 $\pm 3 \%$. (For North America, <br> $40 \pm 3 \%)$. <br> Dial pulse make rate $=$ <br> Make time / (Make time + Break time) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Break time | It is obtained from the formula below and <br> automatically set. <br> PPS = 1000 / (make time + break time) |
| DTMF signal <br> adjustment | The signal send levels are classified into the high <br> group and the low group. The send level is 0.5dB for <br> each 1 of input value. |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-17$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | DTMF signal send |
| Related soft SW | SW53-1 to 4 (DTMF high group end level) <br> SW53-5 to 8 (DTMF low group send level) |

## Operation/procedure

Set the signal send level to 0 dB or the soft SW set value, and specify one dial to be delivered to.

The DTMF signal of the specified dial number is delivered until the interruption command is provided by pressing the [BACK] key.) When another dial number is specified during delivery of the signal, the new dial number is delivered.
The signal send level is returned to the soft SW set value before execution of the mode after completion of the mode.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.


## Operation/procedure

The following FAX information is printed.

|  | Print information | Details |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| A | User switch list |  |
| B | Soft SW list |  |
| C | Dump list | Used to print the system error log (error <br> number and time). For this operation, the <br> system error log is always stored as the <br> ring buffer in the SRAM 256byte area. |
| D | System error |  |


|  | Print information | Details |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| E | Protocol monitor | Regardless of soft SW19-1 status, the <br> protocol monitor of the preceding <br> communication is printed. (Printing is <br> allowed at any time before starting the <br> next communication.) For this operation, <br> the protocol monitor of one <br> communication is always buffered. |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-30$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Recognize TEL/LIU state change. |

## Operation/procedure

When the relay state of the polarity reverse relay, the handset hook switch, or the external telephone hook switch is changed, the content of change is displayed regardless of the soft SW setup. The display of change is kept until an interruption command is supplied by pressing the [BACK] key.

| Check signal | Notification contents |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Signal low | Signal high |
| HS2 | ON | OFF |
| HS1 | ON | OFF |
| RHS | ON | OFF |
| EXHS | ON | OFF |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-32

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Receive data check |

## Operation/procedure

The data received from the line are checked to insure that the following reception data are identical to the judgment data. If identical, "OK" is notified. If not, "NG."

A judgment is made according to the reception start data. Continuous coincidence is required.

| Receive speed | 300 bps |
| :--- | :--- |
| Receive data | 00 |
| Number of judgment data | 100 |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-34$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Communication time measurement display |
| Related soft SW | SW10-1 |

## Operation/procedure

The send/receive test is performed, and the time required for send/ receive of the image data in the test is measured and displayed.

| Setup on the user side when executing communication |  | Communication means <br> Picture quality <br> Density <br> ECM <br> Sender information | : Memory send <br> : Normal Character <br> : Lighter <br> : ON <br> : OFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Measuring range | Send | From flag reception image data until se | ore sending of g of RCP frame |
|  | Receive | From flag reception image data until rece | fore reception of tion of RCP frame |
| Mode when measuring |  | Used to make comm simulation process and measure the tim | nication not in a in the normal screen |


| How to check the time | Enter the simulation for communication time <br> check and check the time. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Measuring unit | msec |

When there are two or more send/receive operations of image data in one communication, only the time of the last send/receive data near the end is measured.

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-37$ |
| :--- |
| Purpose Adjustment/Setting/Check <br> Function <br> (Purpose) Speaker sound volume adjustment <br> Related soft SW SW 86-1, 2 (call sound) <br>  SW 85-1, 2 (line monitor sound) <br>  SW 84-1, 2 (on hook) <br>  SW 88-1, 2 (read end sound) <br>  SW 89-1, 2 (communication end sound) <br>  SW 87-1, 2 (DTMF send sound) <br>  SW75-1, 2 (send end sound length) <br>  SW75-3, 4 (receive end sound length) |

## Operation/procedure

The following test sound is delivered to the line and the speaker to adjust the sound kind and volume.
The send level to the line is the set value of soft SW.
The set values of the selected sound kind and volume are written to each soft SW.

1. Sound kinds pattern

|  | Sound kinds <br> (Test sound) | Sound volume set value |  |  |  | Sound |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| volume <br> Pattern |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 |  | NS | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |
| 2 | Line monitor sound <br> (Test sound: <br> Communication <br> signal sound) | NS | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |
| 3 | On hook <br> (Test sound: <br> Communication <br> signal sound) | Setting <br> Disable | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |
| 4 | Read complete <br> sound | NS | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |
| 5 | Communication <br> end sound | NS | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |
| 6 | DTMF signal send <br> sound | NS | S | M | L | 01 to 35 |

NS=No Sound S=Small M=Medium L=Large
2. Sound volume pattern

| Sound volume | VR set value |  |  |  |  |  |  | Sound volume | VR set value |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 01 | S | M | L |  |  |  |  | 20 |  | S |  | M | L |  |  |
| 02 | S | M |  | L |  |  |  | 21 |  | S |  | M |  | L |  |
| 03 | S | M |  |  | L |  |  | 22 |  | S |  | M |  |  | L |
| 04 | S | M |  |  |  | L |  | 23 |  | S |  |  | M | L |  |
| 05 | S | M |  |  |  |  | L | 24 |  | S |  |  | M |  | L |
| 06 | S |  | M | L |  |  |  | 25 |  | S |  |  |  | M | L |
| 07 | S |  | M |  | L |  |  | 26 |  |  | S | M | L |  |  |
| 08 | S |  | M |  |  | L |  | 27 |  |  | S | M |  | L |  |
| 09 | S |  | M |  |  |  | L | 28 |  |  | S | M |  |  | L |
| 10 | S |  |  | M | L |  |  | 29 |  |  | S |  | M | L |  |
| 11 | S |  |  | M |  | L |  | 30 |  |  | S |  | M |  | L |
| 12 | S |  |  | M |  |  | L | 31 |  |  | S |  |  | M | L |
| 13 | S |  |  |  | M | L |  | 32 |  |  |  | S | M | L |  |
| 14 | S |  |  |  | M |  | L | 33 |  |  |  | S | M |  | L |
| 15 | S |  |  |  |  | M | L | 34 |  |  |  | S |  | M | L |
| 16 |  | S | M | L |  |  |  | 35 |  |  |  |  | S | M | L |


| Sound volume | VR set value |  |  |  |  |  |  | Sound volume | VR set value |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 17 |  | S | M |  | L |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 18 |  | S | M |  |  | L |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 19 |  | S | M |  |  |  | L |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-38$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Time setting/check |

## Operation/procedure

Read/write the time (year, month, day, min., sec.) on RTC of FAX PWB.

Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-41$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | Cl signal check |
| Related soft SW | SW12-6 to 7, SW55-1 to 7 |

Operation/procedure
The call signal from Cl pin is detected to deliver the call sound to the line and the speaker. The volume of call sound follows the soft SW
Signal detection and delivery of pseudo-call sound at detection are executed until the interruption command is provided by pressing the [BACK] key.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## 66-50

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :--- | :--- |
| Function <br> (Purpose) | FAST SRAM clear |

Operation/procedure
SRAM data in FAST area is initialized.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

66-51

| Purpose | Adjustment/Setting/Check |
| :---: | :---: |
| Function (Purpose) | Signal detection check |
| Related soft SW | SW13-3, 4 (call sound volume) <br> SW32-1 to 4 (Distinctive Ring) <br> SW12-6, 7 (CI detection pattern) <br> (00:4 Sine wave 10:3 Sine wave 01:2 Sine wave) <br> SW26-3, 4 (speaker volume) <br> SW35-3, 4 (Cl extinction maximum OFF time) <br> SW51-7, 8 (BT detection cycle) <br> SW52-1, 2 (BT/DT detection level) <br> SW55-1 to 7 (detection possible time of Cl <br> signal) <br> SW56-5, 6 (DT, BT filter efficiency) <br> SW56-7 (DP, BT detection level) |

## Operation/procedure

The detection test of signals is performed and the test result is displayed.

1. Detected signal

| Detected in off-hook. | CI, CNG, FNET, DTMF |
| :--- | :--- |
| Detected in off-hook. | BusyTone, CNG <br>  <br>  <br>  <br> DialTone, CED <br> SDT, flag, DTMF |

Cl displays the detected ring pattern simultaneously.
2. Display combination

|  | Combination | Hook state |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| A | CI, CNG, FNET | On hook |
| B | CED, CNG, BusyTone, DTMF | Off hook |
| C | CED, Flag, BusyTone |  |
| D | CED, Flag, DialTone |  |
| E | CED, Flag, SDT |  |

The display conforms to the detection frequency and pattern specified according to each country information.
The detection signal level conforms to the range set by the soft SW.
The detected table and routines are shared with actual communications.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| $66-52$  <br> Purpose Adjustment/Setting/Check <br> Function (Purpose) Pseudo-ringer check |
| :--- |

- The pseudo-ringer sound is provided in both of the main speaker and the external telephone.
- Holding the handset or the external telephone set stops the bell. Hanging it restarts ringing. This operation is continued until the interruption command is supplied by pressing the [BACK] key.
- The LCD displays the TEL/LIU status, indicating the HOOK condition.
- During sending the pseudo-ringer, RBT (Ring Back Tone) is delivered to the line.
- The bell is ON for 1 sec and OFF for 2 sec . When off-hooking with the bell ON, the HOOK detection at pseudo-ringer ringing can be checked. When off-hooking with the bell OFF, the HOOK detection before pseudo-ringer ringing can be checked.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

| Note | Japan only |
| :--- | :--- |
| $66-53$  <br> Purpose Adjustment/Setting/Check <br> Function (Purpose) SRAM backup |  |

## Operation/procedure

Used to save the SRAM data to the expanded memory and read it.
When reading, however, the current FAX software version and the header FAX software version are collated together. If they are not identical, reading cannot be performed.

1. Back-up targets

| Target data | Registration information, soft SW information, <br> FAX counter information (Information for each <br> department is not required.) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Data out of target | Image management information, <br> communication reservation information |

## 2. Internal process

## SRAM stack processing

1) Used to check if the installed expansion memory is ready to use. If an expanded memory is available, write the target data of the SRAM.
2) After completion of writing, management information is written to the management information block.
3) For the management information, refer to the table below.

However, the FAX program version No. area is written into the data version no. area (FFF0 - FFFF).

| Lowest address | Area name | Content | Expanded memory Upper 2MB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0000 \text { to } \\ & \text { FFAF } \end{aligned}$ | Reserved |  | $\leftarrow$ |
| FFB0 to FFCF | TEST pattern |  | TEST pattern *Reference |
| FFD0 to FFDF | ROM data name | ASCII 16 Byte | REGISTRATION |
| FFEO to FFEF | Data version No. | ASCII 16 Byte | FAX program version No. |
| FFFO to FFF1 | Write complete FLG | ERASE=H'FFFF Completion=H'0000 | $\leftarrow$ |
| FFF2 to FFF3 | SRAM clear flag | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Clear/No=H'0000 } \\ & \text { Clear/Yes }=\mathrm{H}^{\prime} 0001 \end{aligned}$ | Invalid |
| FFF4 to FFF7 | Start address | Data start address | $\leftarrow$ |
| FFF8 to FFFB | End address | Data end address | $\leftarrow$ |
| FFFC to FFFF | SUM | Data check sum | $\leftarrow$ |

*TEST pattern
Recognized that the card normally reads the next data.

| Address | Date | Address | Date | Address | Date |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FFB0 | 0001 | FFBC | 0040 | FFC8 | 1000 |
| FFB2 | 0002 | FFBE | 0080 | FFCA | 2000 |
| FFB4 | 0004 | FFC0 | 0100 | FFCC | 4000 |
| FFB6 | 0008 | FFC2 | 0200 | FFCE | 8000 |
| FFB8 | 0010 | FFC4 | 0400 | - | - |
| FFBA | 0020 | FFC6 | 0800 | - | - |

## Additional process when turning on the power

In normal cases, when installation of an expanded memory is detected after turning ON the power, the expanded memory is cleared. When, however, there are some SRAM data in the expanded memory, it must not be cleared. When the ROM data name (FEDO - FFDF) in the management information of the expanded memory is "REGISTRATION," the expanded memory is not cleared.

> | Process when reading the expanded memory |
| :--- |

1) After checking the data in the management information, reading from the expanded memory and writing into the SRAM are performed.
2) After completion of writing into the SRAM, the expanded memory is initialized for normal use again.
3) After completion of initializing the expanded memory, the SRAM RESTORE operation of the simulation is terminated.

## Remark 1: SRAM data saving procedure

1) Before saving, install the expanded memory to be used. (During power OFF)
2) In the SRAM backup menu (66-53), SRAM BACK UP is selected, and the process to save SRAM data into the expanded memory is executed.
3) After completion of saving, turn off the power.

## Remark 2: SRAM data reading procedure

1) Install the expanded memory into which data are written according to the above procedures. (During power OFF)
2) In the SRAM backup menu (66-53), SRAM RESTORE is selected to write the SRAM data which was saved into the expanded memory into the SRAM of the FAX board.
Note: Executable only when the FAX is installed.

## [9] TROUBLE CODE LIST

## 1. List

| Trouble code |  | Trouble contents | Trouble detection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sub } \\ & \text { code } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| E1 | 00 | IMC board communication trouble | MCU |
|  | 10 | IMC board trouble |  |
|  | 11 | IMC ASIC error |  |
|  | 12 | IMC CODEC error |  |
|  | 13 | IMC board flash ROM error |  |
|  | 14 | IMC board Work RAM error |  |
|  | 15 | IMC board Page Memory error |  |
|  | 16 | IMC board image compression store memory error |  |
|  | 17 | IMC board smoothing IC error |  |
|  | 80 | IMC PWB communication trouble (protocol) |  |
|  | 81 | IMC PWB communication trouble (Parity) |  |
|  | 82 | IMC PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |  |
|  | 84 | IMC PWB communication trouble (Framing) |  |
|  | 88 | IMC PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |  |
| E7 | 02 | LSU trouble |  |
|  | 10 | Shading trouble (black correction) |  |
|  | 11 | Shading trouble (white correction) |  |
|  | 12 | Shading trouble |  |
| F1 | 00 | Finisher communication trouble | FIN |
|  | 01 | Finisher jogger shift trouble |  |
|  | 06 | Finisher shift motor abnormality |  |
|  | 08 | Finisher staple shift motor trouble |  |
|  | 11 | Pusher motor trouble |  |
|  | 15 | Finisher elevator motor trouble |  |
| F2 | 02 | Toner supply failure |  |
|  | 04 | Identification error |  |
|  |  | Model error |  |
|  |  | Type error |  |
|  |  | Destination error |  |
|  |  | Data abnormality |  |
|  |  | Misc error |  |
| F5 | 02 | Copy lamp lighting abnormality |  |
| F6 | 00 | F6-**: MCU-FAX communication trouble | MCU |
|  | 10 | FAX control PWB trouble |  |
|  | 80 | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |  |
|  | 81 | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Parity) |  |
|  | 82 | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Over-run) |  |
|  | 84 | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Framing) |  |
|  | 88 | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |  |
|  | 99 | Machine-FAX board language error |  |


| Trouble code |  | Trouble contents | Trouble detection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| F9 | 00 | F9-**: MCU-PRT communication trouble | MCU |
|  | 10 | Printer PWB trouble |  |
|  | 80 | Printer PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |  |
|  | 81 | Printer PWB communication trouble (Parity) |  |
|  | 82 | Printer PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |  |
|  | 84 | Printer PWB communication trouble (Framing) |  |
|  | 88 | Printer PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |  |
|  | 99 | Machine-PCL board language error |  |
| H2 | 00 | Thermistor open detection |  |
| H3 | 00 | Heat roller abnormally high temperature |  |
| H4 | 00 | Heat roller abnormally low temperature |  |
| H5 | 01 | 5 continuous T10D(T20D) not-reaching JAM |  |
|  | 02 | Fusing thermistor abnormality |  |
| L1 | 00 | Scanner feed trouble |  |
| L3 | 00 | Scanner return trouble |  |
| L4 | 01 | Main motor lock |  |
|  | 11 | Shifter motor trouble |  |
| L6 | 10 | Polygon motor lock trouble |  |
| L8 | 01 | Zero cross detection error |  |
| U2 | 04 | EEPROM communication error |  |
|  | 11 | Counter check sum error |  |
|  | 12 | Adjustment value check sum error |  |
|  | 20 | Machine speed code data error |  |
|  | 40 | CRUM chip communication error |  |
| U7 | 00 | RIC communication trouble |  |
| U9 | 00 | U9-**: MCU-OPE communication trouble | OPE |
|  | 80 | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |  |
|  | 81 | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Parity) |  |
|  | 82 | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |  |
|  | 84 | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Framing) |  |
|  | 88 | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Time-out) |  |
|  | 99 | Operation panel language error |  |
| CE | 00 | The other communication error has occurred. | Network |
|  | 01 | The print server card (AR-NC3D) is not installed or defective. | Network |
|  | 02 | The specified mail server or the FTP server is not found. | Network |
|  | 03 | The specified server does not correspond during image transmission. | Network |
|  | 04 | The entered account name of the FTP server or the password is invalid. | Network |
|  | 05 | The entered directory of the FTP server is invalid. | Network |
| EE | EL | Developer adjustment trouble (Overtoner abnormality) |  |
|  | EU | Developer adjustment trouble (Undertoner abnormality) |  |
| PF | 00 | RIC copy inhibit signal received |  |

## 2. Self diagnostics

| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| E1 | 00 | Content | E1-**: MCU-IMC communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication establishment error/ framing/parity/protocol error |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
|  | 10 | Content | IMC PWB trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and IMC PWB |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
|  | 11 | Content | IMC board ASIC error |
|  |  | Details | ASIC abnormality on IMC board |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  | 12 | Content | IMC board CODEC IC error |
|  |  | Details | CODEC IC (JBIG chip) abnormality on IMC board |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | JBIG IC abnormality |
|  | 13 | Content | IMC board flash ROM error |
|  |  | Details | Flash ROM abnormality on IMC board |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. <br> "When the program download is abnormally terminated, a error may occur. In this case, download the program again." |
|  |  | Remarks | Program ROM abnormality |
|  | 14 | Content | IMC board Work RAM error |
|  |  | Details | IMC extended compression memory module installation error IMC extended compression memory access error |
|  |  | Cause | IMC expanded memory module installation trouble IMC expanded memory module trouble IMC expanded memory contact trouble IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check installation of the expanded memory module. (Spec: Added to Slot 1.) Replace the expanded memory module. Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | Extend memory abnormality for compressed image store (DIMM module) |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Main } \\ & \text { code } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Sub } \\ \text { code } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| E1 | 15 | Content | IMC board Page Memory error |
|  |  | Details | IMC Page Memory abnormality |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | Print Buffer Memory abnormality |
|  | 16 | Content | IMC board compression image store memory error |
|  |  | Details | IMC standard compression memory access error |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  | 17 | Content | IMC board smoothing IC error |
|  |  | Details | IMC smoothing IC abnormality |
|  |  | Cause | IMC board abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the IMC PWB. |
|  | 80 | Content | IMC PWB communication trouble (protocol) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and IMC PWB (Protocol error) |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
|  | 81 | Content | IMC PWB communication trouble (Parity) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer IMC (Parity error) |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
|  | 82 | Content | IMC PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and IMC PWB (Overrun error) |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub <br> code |  |  |
| E1 | 84 | Content | IMC PWB communication trouble (Framing) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and IMC PWB (Framing error) |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
|  | 88 | Content | IMC PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and IMC PWB (Time-out error) |
|  |  | Cause | IMC PWB connector disconnection IMC PWB MCU PWB harness failure Motherboard connector pin breakage IMC PWB ROM defect, data failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the IMC PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check the ROM of the IMC PWB. |
| E7 | 02 | Content | LSU trouble |
|  |  | Details | BD signal from LSU is not detected in a constant cycle. (Kept OFF or ON) |
|  |  | Cause | LSU connector or LSU inside harness trouble or disconnection Polygon motor rotation abnormality Laser does not illuminate. MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check for disconnection of the LSU connector. <br> Check the LSU operation with SIM 61-1. <br> Check that the polygon motor rotates normally. <br> Check laser LED lighting. <br> LSU replacement <br> Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  | 10 | Content | Shading trouble (black correction) |
|  |  | Details | CCD black reference plate scan level abnormality when the copy lamp turns off. |
|  |  | Cause | Flat cable installation failure to CCD unit CCD unit error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check flat cable installation to the CCD unit. <br> Check CCD unit. |
|  | 11 | Content | Shading trouble (white correction) |
|  |  | Details | Improper CCD white reference plate reading level for copy lamp lighting |
|  |  | Cause | Flat cable installation failure to CCD unit "Dirt on the mirror, lens, and reference white plate" <br> Copy lamp operation error CCD unit abnormality MCU PWB abnormality (Occurred in the SPF scan position.) |
|  |  | Check and remedy | "Clean the mirror, the lens, and the reference white plate." <br> Check the copy lamp light quantity and its operation. (SIM 5-3) <br> Check CCD unit. <br> Check MCU PWB. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { Sub } \\ \text { code } \end{array}$ |  |  |
| E7 | 12 | Content | Shading trouble |
|  |  | Details | White correction is not completed in the specified number of times. |
|  |  | Cause | Flat cable installation failure to CCD unit "Dirt on the mirror, lens, and reference white plate" <br> Copy lamp lighting trouble CCD unit abnormality MCU PWB abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | "Clean the mirror, the lens, and the reference white plate." <br> Check the copy lamp light quantity and its operation. (SIM 5-3) <br> Check CCD unit. <br> Check MCU PWB. |
| F1 | 00 | Content | Finisher communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication line test error occurs when power is turned on or after the exit of a simulation mode. <br> Error in Finisher communication |
|  |  | Cause | Connection trouble or disconnection of the connector and harness between the body and the finisher. <br> Finisher control PWB trouble <br> Control PWB failure <br> Malfunction by noises |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Turn off/of the power to cancel the trouble. Check connector/harness of communication line Replace the finisher control PWB. |
|  | 01 | Content | Side guide plated home position error |
|  |  | Details | The side guide plate cannot return to the home position. |
|  |  | Cause | Side guide plate drive motor abnormality Side guide plate home position sensor abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM3-3-1 to check the side guide plate motor operation. |
|  | 06 | Content | Offset motor trouble |
|  |  | Details | When the offset motor of the finisher is driven it does not reach the specified position. |
|  |  | Cause | Offset motor abnormality Offset motor origin sensor abnormality Finisher PWB abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 3-3-6 to check the offset motor operation. |
|  | 08 | Content | Staple motor error |
|  |  | Details | The staple motor cannot return to the home position. |
|  |  | Cause | Staple motor abnormality Staple motor home position sensor abnormality Staple unit abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 3-3-7 to check the staple motor operation. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| F1 | 11 | Content | Rear edge plate home position error |
|  |  | Details | The rear edge plate cannot return to the home position. |
|  |  | Cause | Rear edge plate drive motor abnormality Side guide plate home position sensor abnormality Finisher PWB abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 3-3-2 to check the rear edge plate motor operation. |
|  | 15 | Content | Finisher lift-up motor trouble |
|  |  | Details | The finisher lift-up motor does not reach the specified position. |
|  |  | Cause | Lift-up motor abnormality Lift-up motor upper limit sensor abnormality Finisher PWB abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 3-3-5 to check the lift-up motor operation. |
| F2 | 02 | Content | Toner supply failure |
|  |  | Details | The value judged from the actual toner supply hysteresis differs greatly from the toner sensor value. |
|  |  | Cause | Developing unit trouble Toner supply abnormality caused by installation of unpacked toner cartridge |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the developing unit Use SIM 25-1 to perform DV stirring. |
|  | 04 | Content | Identification error |
|  |  |  | Model error |
|  |  |  | Type error |
|  |  |  | Destination error |
|  |  |  | Data abnormality |
|  |  |  | Misc error |
|  |  | Details | Identification error <br> When the CRUM trademark differs. <br> When the CRUM company code differs. |
|  |  |  | Model error <br> When the boot program model code does not match with the CRUM model information. |
|  |  |  | Type error <br> When the CRUM type is other than [Genuine/Conversion/Production rotation]. |
|  |  |  | Destination error <br> The destination of the body differs from that of the CRUM. |
|  |  |  | Data abnormality <br> The initial check information includes an erroneous value. <br> When the max. toner supply time is 00 : When the print hard stop is 00 : |
|  |  | Cause | CRUM chip failure Erroneous developing unit |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the CRUM chip. Replace the developing unit |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| F5 | 02 | Content | Copy lamp lighting abnormality |
|  |  | Details | The copy lamp does not light up. |
|  |  | Cause | Copy lamp error Copy lamp harness abnormality CCD PWB harness abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the copy lamp (SIM 5-3) When the lamp lights: <br> Check the harnesses and connectors between the CCD unit and the MCU PWB. When the lamp does not light: Check the harness and connector between the copy lamp and the MCU PWB. <br> Replace the copy lamp unit. Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | Copy lamp disconnection Cable is not attached. |
| F6 | 00 | Content | F6-**: MCU-FAX communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication establishment error/ framing/parity/protocol error |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 10 | Content | FAX control PWB trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 80 | Content | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB (Protocol error) |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| F6 | 81 | Content | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Parity) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB (Parity error) |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 82 | Content | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Over-run) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB (Overrun error) |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 84 | Content | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Framing) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB (Framing error) |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 88 | Content | FAX control PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and FAX control PWB (Timeout error) |
|  |  | Cause | FAX control PWB connector disconnection Defective harness between FAX control PWB and MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage FAX control PWB ROM error/Data error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connector/harness of FAX control PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check FAX control PWB ROM. |
|  | 99 | Content | Machine-FAX board language error |
|  |  | Details | The machine language setup does not coincide with the FAX board language setup. |
|  |  | Cause | FAX board correction error SIM setup error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the firmware of the FAX board and the combination of the panel screen data, and download the correct version, if necessary. <br> Check the machine language information. (Machine language setup: SIM 26-22) |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sub } \\ & \text { code } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| F9 | 00 | Content | F9-**: MCU-PRT communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication establishment error/ framing/parity/protocol error |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 10 | Content | Printer PWB trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 80 | Content | Printer PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB (Protocol error) |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB <br> Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 81 | Content | Printer PWB communication trouble (Parity) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB (Parity error) |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB <br> Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. Check ROM on printer PWB. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| F9 | 82 | Content | Printer PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB (Overrun error) |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB <br> Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. <br> Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 84 | Content | Printer PWB communication trouble (Framing) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB (Framing error) |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB <br> Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. <br> Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 88 | Content | Printer PWB communication trouble (Timeout) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and printer PWB (Timeout error) |
|  |  | Cause | Printer PWB connector disconnection Harness trouble between the printer PWB and the MCU PWB <br> Motherboard connector pin breakage Printer PWB ROM trouble/Data disturbance |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the printer PWB and MCU PWB. <br> Check the grounding of the copier. <br> Check ROM on printer PWB. |
|  | 99 | Content | Machine-PCL board language error |
|  |  | Details | The machine language setup does not coincide with the PCL board language setup. |
|  |  | Cause | PCL board connection error SIM setup error |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check the firmware of the PCL board and the combination of the panel screen data, and download the correct version, if necessary. <br> Check the machine language information. (Machine language setup: SIM 26-22) |
| H2 | 00 | Content | Thermistor open detection |
|  |  | Details | Thermistor open detection Fusing unit not installed |
|  |  | Cause | Thermistor defect Control PWB failure Fusing section connector contact failure Fusing unit not installed |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the harness and the connector of the thermistor and the MCU. <br> Clear the display of self-diagnostics with SIM 14. |
|  |  | Remarks | Thermistor open |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sub } \\ & \text { code } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| H3 | 00 | Content | Heat roller abnormally high temperature |
|  |  | Details | The fusing temperature is over $220^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. |
|  |  | Cause | Thermistor defect Control PWB failure Fusing section connector contact failure |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check the heater lamp blinking with SIM 52. <br> When the lamp blinks normally: <br> Check the thermistor and the harness. <br> Check the MCU PWB thermistor input circuit. <br> If lamp lights and stays lit: <br> Check the power PWB and the MCU PWB lamp control circuit. <br> Clear the display of self-diagnostics with SIM 14. |
| H4 | 00 | Content | Heat roller abnormally low temperature |
|  |  | Details | The setup temperature (about $90^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is not reached within the specified time (about 35 sec ) from turning on the power ON SW. (When the temperature falls below $120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ in the standby mode.) |
|  |  | Cause | Thermistor defect Heater lamp failure Thermostat failure Control PWB failure |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check the heater lamp blinking with SIM 5- <br> 2. <br> When the lamp blinks normally: <br> Check the thermistor and the harness. <br> Check the MCU PWB thermistor input circuit. <br> When the lamp does not light: <br> Check for disconnection of the heater <br> lamp and thermostat. <br> Check the interlock switch. <br> Check the power PWB and the MCU PWB lamp control circuit. <br> Clear the display of self-diagnostics with SIM 14. |
| H5 | 01 | Content | 5 continuous T10D(T20D) not-reaching JAM |
|  |  | Details | T10D(T20D) not-reaching JAM was detected 5 continuous times. |
|  |  | Cause | The fusing JAM is not completely removed. (Jam paper remains.) T10D or T20D sensor breakdown or harness connection trouble Fusing unit installation failure |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check for jam paper in the fusing section. (paper winding, etc.) <br> Check fusing unit installation <br> Clear the trouble with SIM 14. |
|  | 02 | Content | Fusing thermistor abnormality detect |
|  |  | Details | Fusing thermistor temperature transient abnormality (Paper winding) |
|  |  | Cause | Paper wound around the fusing roller. Fusing pawl abnormality Fusing unit installation failure |
|  |  | Check <br> and remedy | Check for jam paper in the fusing section. (paper winding, etc.) Check installation of the fusing unit. Check the fusing pawl. <br> Clear the trouble with SIM 14. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| L1 | 00 | Content | Scanner feed trouble |
|  |  | Details | Scanner feed is not completed within the specified time. |
|  |  | Cause | Mirror unit defect <br> Scanner wire disconnection <br> Origin detection sensor error <br> Mirror motor harness abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the scanning operation with SIM 1- <br> 1. <br> Mirror base feed trouble <br> Check for disconnection of the scanner wire. <br> Check the harness and connector between the mirror motor and the MCU PWB. <br> Replace the mirror unit. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. <br> When the mirror feeds: <br> Check the mirror home position sensor with SiM 1-2. |
| L3 | 00 | Content | Scanner return trouble |
|  |  | Details | Scanner return is not completed within the specified time. <br> "When OC copying with the mirror at the home position, the mirror is not in the home position. " |
|  |  | Cause | Mirror unit defect <br> The scanner wire is disconnected. Origin detection sensor error Mirror motor harness abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the scanning operation with SIM 1- <br> 1. <br> Mirror base return trouble <br> Check for disconnection of the scanner wire. <br> Check the harness and connector between the mirror motor and the MCU PWB. <br> Replace the mirror unit. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. <br> When the mirror feeds: <br> Check the mirror home position sensor with SiM 1-2. |
| L4 | 01 | Content | Main motor lock |
|  |  | Details | The main motor does not rotate. <br> The motor lock signal is detected for 1 sec or more after the main motor rotates. The motor lock signal is detected for 1 sec during rotation of the main motor. |
|  |  | Cause | Main motor defect <br> Main motor connection harness trouble or disconnection MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the main motor operation with SIM 25-1. <br> Check connection of the main motor harness and connector. <br> Replace the main motor. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Sub } \\ & \text { code } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |  |  |
| L4 | 11 | Content | Shifter motor trouble |
|  |  | Details | The shifter home position detection signal is not detected when the shifter is operating. |
|  |  | Cause | Shifter motor trouble or harness connection trouble and disconnection Shifter home position sensor trouble |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the shift motor operation with SIM 3-11. <br> Check connection of the shifter motor harness/connector. <br> Replace the shifter motor. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. |
| L6 | 10 | Content | Polygon motor lock trouble |
|  |  | Details | The polygon motor does not rotate. The motor lock signal is detected for 6sec or more after the polygon motor rotates. The motor lock signal is detected for 1 sec during rotation of the polygon motor. |
|  |  | Cause | Polygon motor unit failure <br> Polygon motor connection harness trouble or disconnection <br> MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the polygon motor operation with SIM 61-1. <br> Check connector/harness of polygon motor <br> Replace the polygon motor. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. |
| L8 | 01 | Content | Zero cross detection error |
|  |  | Details | The zero cross signal is not detected. |
|  |  | Cause | Power failure MCU PWB abnormality |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check connection of the harness and connector. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. <br> Power unit replacement |
| U2 | 04 | Content | EEPROM communication error |
|  |  | Details | MCU PWB EEPROM access circuit failure |
|  |  | Cause | EEPROM defective ICU PWB EEPROM access circuit failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check that the EEPROM is properly set. Clear trouble with SIM 16. <br> Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | EEPROM abnormality |
|  | 11 | Content | Counter check sum error |
|  |  | Details | Counter check sum value stored in the EEPROM is abnormal. |
|  |  | Cause | EEPROM defective ICU PWB EEPROM access circuit failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check that the EEPROM is properly set. Clear trouble with SIM 16. Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | Checksum error in counter data area |
|  | 12 | Content | Adjustment value check sum error |
|  |  | Details | Adjustment value check sum error (EEPROM) |
|  |  | Cause | EEPROM defective ICU PWB EEPROM access circuit failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check that the EEPROM is properly set. Clear trouble with SIM 16. Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | Checksum error in adjustment value data area |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{gathered} \text { Sub } \\ \text { code } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| U2 | 20 | Content | Machine speed code data error |
|  |  | Details | The machine information is not identical to the model code speed information. |
|  |  | Cause | EEPROM defective SIM operation error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check that the machine set with SIM 2657 is identical to the model information. |
|  |  | Remarks | When the boot program speed code does not match with the body model information. |
|  | 40 | Content | CRUM chip communication error |
|  |  | Details | Error in MCU-CRUM chip communication |
|  |  | Cause | CRUM chip failure Developing unit contact trouble MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Replace the CRUM chip. Check installation of the developing unit. Clear the trouble with SIM 16. Replace the MCU PWB. |
|  |  | Remarks | CRUM communication error |
| U7 | 00 | Content | RIC communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Error in communication with RIC Error in communication test after turning on the power or canceling SIM. |
|  |  | Cause | Connector harness contact trouble or disconnection <br> RIC control PWB trouble <br> MCU PWB failure <br> Malfunction by noises |
|  |  | Check and remedy | check the communication cable connectors from the RIC box to the main body. |
| U9 | 00 | Content | U9-**: MCU-OPE communication trouble |
|  |  | Details | Communication establishment error/ framing/parity/protocol error |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. Check ROM on the operation control PWB. |
|  | 80 | Content | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Protocol) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and the operation control PWB (Protocol error) |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \begin{array}{l} \text { Sub } \\ \text { code } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  |  |
| U9 | 81 | Content | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Parity) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and the operation control PWB (Parity error) |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection <br> Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. |
|  | 82 | Content | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Overrun) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and the operation control PWB (Overrun error) |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. |
|  | 84 | Content | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Framing) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and the operation control PWB (Framing error) |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. |
|  | 88 | Content | Operation control PWB communication trouble (Time-out) |
|  |  | Details | Communication trouble between MCU and the operation PWB (Time-out error) |
|  |  | Cause | Operation control PWB connector disconnection Operation control PWB MCU PWB harness failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the connectors and harness of the operation control PWB and MCU PWB. Check the grounding of the copier. |
|  | 99 | Content | Operation panel destination error |
|  |  | Details | An error occurred in checking the operation panel and the destination of the body. |
|  |  | Cause | Erroneous connection the operation panel unit <br> SIM setup error |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Check the destination information of the operation panel unit and the MCU. (Use SIM 26-22 for the destination of the body.) |
| CE | 00 | Content | The other communication error has occurred. |
|  |  | Detail | Communication error |
|  |  | Cause | Network Cable connection failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the Network Cable is properly inserted. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | Sub code |  |  |
| CE | 01 | Content | The print server card (AR-NC3D) is not installed or defective. |
|  |  | Detail | NC3D connection failure |
|  |  | Cause | NC-3D is not installed to the AR-PB2A board. <br> NC-3D control PWB trouble |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the NC-3D is installed to the AR-PB2A board. <br> 2) Output the NIC Config. Page to check the NIC version. <br> 3) Replace the NIC. |
|  | 02 | Content | The specified mail server or the FTP server is not found. |
|  |  | Detail | The specified mail server or the FTP server is not found. |
|  |  | Cause | Network Cable connection failure <br> Network setup failure <br> SMTP server/FTP server/NST trouble |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the Network Cable is inserted properly. <br> 2) Check that the connected network supports TCP/IP protocol. <br> 3) Check from the Web Page that the Primary/Secondary E-mail Server Address or the Destination FTP server/ Desktop PC address are properly set. <br> 4) If the above address is described with Hostname, check that the DNS server is properly set. <br> 5) Check that the SMTP server/FTP server/NST causes a trouble or not. |
|  | 03 | Content | The specified server does not correspond during image transmission. |
|  |  | Detail | The specified server does not correspond during image transmission. |
|  |  | Cause | Network Cable connection failure |
|  |  |  | SMTP server/FTP server/NST trouble |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the Network Cable is inserted properly. <br> 2) Check that the SMTP server/FTP server/NST causes a trouble or not. |
|  | 04 | Content | The entered account name of the FTP server or the password is invalid. |
|  |  | Detail | The entered account name of the FTP server or the password is invalid. |
|  |  | Cause | Network Cable connection failure |
|  |  |  | The account name of the FTP server recorded as the destination or the password for the account name is erroneous. |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the Network Cable is inserted properly. <br> 2) Check that the account name of the FTP server recorded as the destination and the password for the account name are proper. |


| Trouble code |  | Details of trouble |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Main code | $\begin{gathered} \text { Sub } \\ \text { code } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| CE | 05 | Content | The entered directory of the FTP server is invalid. |
|  |  | Detail | The entered directory of the FTP server is invalid. |
|  |  | Cause | Network Cable connection failure Check that the directory name exists in the FTP server recorded as the destination. |
|  |  | Check and remedy | 1) Check that the Network Cable is inserted properly. <br> 2) Check that the directory name exists in the FTP server recorded as the destination. |
| EE | EL | Content | Developer adjustment trouble (Over-toner abnormality) |
|  |  | Details | An abnormality occurred in execution of automatic developer adjustment. Sample data over-toner was detected. |
|  |  | Cause | Toner concentration sensor abnormality <br> Toner concentration trouble <br> Developing unit trouble <br> MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 25-2 to perform the auto developer adjustment. |
|  | EU | Content | Developer adjustment trouble (Undertoner abnormality) |
|  |  | Details | An abnormality occurred in execution of automatic developer adjustment. Sample data under-toner was detected. |
|  |  | Cause | Toner concentration sensor abnormality Toner concentration trouble Developing unit trouble MCU PWB failure |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Use SIM 25-2 to perform the auto developer adjustment. |
| PF | 00 | Content | RIC copy inhibit signal received |
|  |  | Details | The copy inhibit command from RIC is received. |
|  |  | Cause | Judged by the host. |
|  |  | Check and remedy | Information the host. Clear trouble with SIM 17. |

## [10] DISASSEMBLY, ASSEMBLY AND MAINTENANCE

## 1. Maintenance table

N : Check (Check, clean, replace or adjust according to necessity.)
Y: Cleaning R: Replace L: Lubricate

| Unit | Parts | 50k | 100k | 150k | 200k | 250k | 300k | Note |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Process unit | Drum | R | R | R | R | R | R |  |
|  | Cleaning blade | R | R | R | R | R | R |  |
|  | Drum frame unit | N | N | N | R | N | N |  |
|  | Seal F/R | N | N | N | N | N | N |  |
|  | MC unit | R | R | R | R | R | R | Unit supply only (Individual parts in the unit can not be supplied.) |
|  | Separation pawl unit | R | R | R | R | R | R | Unit supply only (Individual parts in the unit can not be supplied.) |
| DV unit | Developer | R | R | R | R | R | R |  |
|  | DV seal | N | N | N | N | N | N |  |
|  | Side seal (F/R) | N | N | N | N | N | N |  |
| Fusing unit | Upper heat roller | Y | Y | R | Y | Y | R |  |
|  | Lower heat roller | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | R |  |
|  | Upper separation pawl | Y | Y | R | Y | Y | R |  |
|  | Lower separation pawl | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | R |  |
|  | Thermistor | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |  |
|  | Upper heat roller gear | L | L | R | L | L | R |  |
|  | Upper heat roller bush | N | N | R | N | N | R |  |
|  | Lower heat roller bearing | N | N | N | N | N | R |  |
|  | Paper guide | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |  |
|  | Cleaning pad | N | N | R | N | N | R |  |
| Paper feed | Pickup roller (Multi bypass tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 50k |
|  | Separation sheet (Multi bypass tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 50k |
|  | Separation roller (Multi bypass tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 50k |
|  | Pickup roller (500 sheets tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 100 k |
|  | Separation sheet (500 sheets tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 100 k |
|  | Separation roller (500 sheets tray) | N | N | N | N | N | N | Changing criteria for parts: 100k |
| Transport roller unit | Transport roller unit | Y | R | Y | R | Y | R | Unit supply only (Individual parts in the unit can not be supplied.) |
|  | Gears | R | R | R | R | R | R |  |
| Ozone filter | Ozone filter | R | R | R | R | R | R |  |
| Others | Paper feed rollers | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |  |
|  | Gears | L | L | L | L | L | L |  |
| LSU | Dust-proof glass | N | N | N | N | N | N | Clean only the outer surface of the glass with the developing CRU disassembled (with the LSU attached to the machine). |

## 2. Counter clear

| Item | SIM | Remarks |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Maintenance cycle setting | SIM 21-1 |  |
| Jam/trouble counter clear | SIM 24-1 |  |
| Paper feed counter clear | SIM 24-2 | At maintenance |
| DF/Scan/Stapler counter clear | SIM 24-3 | At maintenance |
| Maintenance counter clear | SIM 24-4 | At drum replacement |
| Developing counter clear | SIM 24-5 | At developer replacement |
| Copy counter clear | SIM 24-6 |  |
| Drum counter clear | SIM 24-7 | At drum replacement |
| Printer, other counter clear | SIM 24-9 |  |
| FAX related counter clear | SIM 24-14 |  |
| Scanner mode counter clear | SIM 24-15 |  |

## 3. List of disassembly and assembly

| Unit | Parts |
| :---: | :---: |
| A. Process unit | (1) Drum |
|  | (2) Drum section |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  | e. Separation pawl |
| B. Developing unit | (1) Developer |
|  | (2) DV seal/side seal |
| C. Fusing unit | (1) Upper heat roller |
|  | (2) Lower heat roller |
|  | (3) Fusing Separation Pawl (upper) |
|  | (4) Fusing Separation Pawl (lower) |
|  | (5) Thermistor |
|  | (6) Upper heat roller gear |
|  | (7) Upper heat roller bearing |
|  | (8) Lower heat roller bearing |
|  | (9) Paper guide |


| Unit | Parts |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| D. Paper feed | (1) Multi manual paper feed | a. Paper feed roller/pickup roller |
|  |  | b. Separation sheet |
|  | (2) Upper 500 sheets tray paper feed | a. Paper feed roller |
|  |  | b. Pickup roller |
|  |  | c. Separation sheet |
|  | (3) Lower 500 sheets tray paper feed | a. Paper feed roller |
|  |  | b. Pickup roller |
|  |  | c. Separation sheet |
| E. Side door unit | (1) Transport roller unit |  |
| F. 1st paper exit unit | (1) Paper exit roller |  |
| G. Laser unit | (1) LSU |  |
| H. Power unit | (1) Power source |  |
| I. PWB | (1) Option CN PWB |  |
|  | (2) MCU PWB |  |
|  | (3) Second interface PWB |  |
| J. Others | Ozone filter |  |

## 4. Details

## A. Process unit

(1) Drum


| No. | Part name | Service items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Drum | Replace | 50 k |  |

(2) Drum section
a. Main charger

b. Cleaning blade

c. Drum frame unit

d. Moquette F/R


Note: If it disturbs the blade movement, replace it and attach new one.

## e. Separation pawl

Disassembly* Hold the tip of the separation pawl and remove it.


Assembly* Press the center of the separation pawl and install it.

B. Developing section
(1) Developer



* When assembling, check that the hook is securely engaged in two positions.
(2) DV seal/side seal



## C. Fusing section


(1) Upper heat roller

(4) Fusing Separation Pawl (lower)

(5) Thermistor

(6) Upper heat roller gear

(7) Upper heat roller bearing


(9) Paper guide


| No. | Part name | Service items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Upper heat roller | Cleaning | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 150k |  |
| 2 | Lower heat roller | Cleaning | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 300k |  |
| 3 | Upper separation pawl | Cleaning | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 150k |  |
| 4 | Lower separation pawl | Cleaning | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 300k |  |
| 5 | Thermistor | Cleaning | 50k |  |
| 6 | Upper heat roller gear | Lubricate | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 150k |  |
| 7 | Upper heat roller bearing | Check | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 150k |  |
| 8 | Lower heat roller bearing | Check | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 300k |  |
| 9 | Paper guide | Cleaning | 50k |  |
| 10 | Cleaning pad U | Check | 50k |  |
|  |  | Replace | 150k |  |

## D. Paper feed section



| A | Paper feed roller |
| :---: | :--- |
| B | Pickup roller |
| C | Separation sheet |

(1) Multi manual paper feed
a. Paper feed roller/pickup roller


Removal*Raise the shutter arm before its removal.
2)


Installation*Install so that the boss of the lever arm comes into the rib of the shutter arm


Installation*Install so that the cam transmit arm (1) comes under the roller arm (2).


b. Separation sheet


* Slightly apply grease GP501MR (UKOG-0012QSZZ) around the axis. One rice grain for each.

| No. | Part name | Service <br> items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Pickup roller (Multi <br> bypass tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |
| 2 | Separation roller (Multi <br> bypass tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |
| 3 | Separation sheet (Multi <br> bypass tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |

## (2) Upper 500 sheets tray paper feed

## a. Paper feed roller/pickup roller



Note: With the toner cartridge installed, do not tilt or shake the developer cartridge.



* When replacing, be careful not to adhere conduction grease (black) to the drive section.

Slightly apply grease GE676 (UKOG-0013QSZZ) to the drum boss.

Note: When removing the screw 1 in the figure below, use a screw driver the whole length of which is 5 cm or less and the iron tip of which is 3.5 cm or less.


## b. Separation sheet





* Slightly apply grease GP501MR (UKOG-0012QSZZ) around the axis. One rice grain for each.
Grease should not come out when assembling.

| No. | Part name | Service <br> items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Pickup roller (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |
| 2 | Separation roller (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |
| 3 | Separation sheet (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria <br> for parts: 50 k |

(3) Lower 500 sheets tray paper feed

## a. Paper feed roller/pickup roller


b. Separation sheet


* Slightly apply grease GP501MR (UKOG-0012QSZZ) around the axis. One rice grain for each.
Grease should not come out when assembling.

| No. | Part name | Service <br> items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Pickup roller (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria for <br> parts: 100 k |
| 2 | Separation roller (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria for <br> parts: 100 k |
| 3 | Separationsheet (500 <br> sheets tray) | Check | 50 k | Changing criteria for <br> parts: 100 k |

## E. Side door unit

(1) Transport roller unit


* Check that two springs are securely inserted into the transfer roller unit bosses.

| No. | Part name | Service <br> items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Transport <br> roller unit | Cleaning | 50 k | Unit supply only <br> (Individual parts in the <br> unit can not be supplied.) |

F. 1st paper exit unit
(1) Paper exit roller

e


- Remove the delivery frame.

- Remove the front right cabinet.

- Remove the MCU PWB section connector.



Note: Check to confirm that the solenoid shaft is in the gate bracket, and fix with the screw.

G. Laser unit


Note: Before removing the left cover, remove the No. 1 cassette in advance.
(1) LSU


Remove the panel unit, before performing the following works.



## H. Power unit

(1) Power source

I. PWB
(1) Option CN PWB

(2) MCU PWB

(3) Second interface PWB


J. Ozone filter


Note: Before removing the left cover, remove the No. 1 cassette in advance.


| No. | Part name | Service items | Cycle | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Ozone filter | Replace | 50 k |  |

## [11] OTHERS

## 1. Flash ROM version up procedure

## (Items necessary for upgrade)

A Personal computer
B RS232C Cross cable (D-sub 9pin to D-sub 9pin, or D-sub 25pin to D-sub 9pin)
C Software for upgrade

## (Type of ROM)

Flash ROM is directly attached to each PWB
(Targeted PWBs)
1 MCU-PWB
2 Panel-PWB
Diagrammatic sketch for upgrade method

(AR-5127)

## (Necessary files for download)

- Maintenance software: mainte.exe
- Loader files

Main body loader file: downbios.cvt
Panel loader file: pnlbios.cvt
The maintenance program performs the following program download operations:

- Main body program download


## A. Program download procedure (Main body program)

The download procedures of the main body program follows:

1) Preliminary procedure: Connect the PC and the main body with the download cable (RS-232C cable).
2) PC side: The maintenance program is booted. (Ver. 3.00) The type selection dialog is shown. Select the type of the machine from the list.
3) PC side: Confirm that the tree is displayed on the maintenance program.
4) Main body side: Turn on the power of the main body. The machine enters the download mode.

5) PC side: Double click "Special" in the main tree item to develop the sub tree items, and double click "All Area Download" in the sub tree items.
6) PC side: The maintenance program asks you the file name. Specify the download file (*.dat).
Download file

- leopXXXX.dat:

Collective download file (Main body, Panel)
XXXXT: Whole release version
7) PC side: The download file is specified, download is automatically performed.
Note: If the download file version is older than the machine file version, the following alert message is displayed during download.


In this case, press the OK button to interrupt the current download operation, and the next download is performed.
7) PC side: When the message below is displayed, download is completed.
Completion message: DOWNLOAD COMPLETE
8) After-process: Terminate the maintenance program, and turn on the power of the main body.
With the above procedures, download is completed.

* If the machine is not booted normally after downloading the program, there may be possibility of improper downloading. In that case, repeat procedures 1) - 4) and set the maintenance software to the download mode. Double-click "Special" in the main tree items to developed the sub tree items. Double-click "Error status acquisition" in the sub tree items. If the response is "There is no error." it is normal. If not, perform downloading again.


## 2. User programs

| User Program | Description | Default | Setting range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Auditing Mode | Enables or disables the basic auditing mode, which controls access to copier. |  |  |
| Copies per Account | Displays the total number of copies made against account numbers. |  |  |
| Reset Account | Resets all audit accounts or selectively resets individual accounts. |  |  |
| Account Number Control | Registers accounts, deletes accounts or changes an account number. |  |  |
| Account Limit | Sets the maximum number of copies which can be made against a registered account number. |  |  |
| Account Number Security | Guards against trial and error entering of audit account numbers. |  |  |
| Key Operator Number Change | Changes the key operator code number. | 00000 (5 digits) |  |
| Exposure Adjust | Lightens or darkens copies in the automatic exposure mode. | Level 3 | 5 steps |
| Limit of Copies | Sets the maximum number of copies that can be selected. | 999 |  |
| Initial Conditions | Sets the copier's initial settings in the ready condition. |  |  |
| Stream Feeding | Enables the stream feeding mode for copying from the optional document feeder. |  |  |
| Offset Function | Enables/disables the offset function in the center tray. |  |  |
| Toner Save Mode | Reduces toner consumption. |  |  |
| Auto Power Off | Sets a time interval after which the copier enters the auto power shut-off mode. | 60sec | 10/30/60/90/120/240min |
| Auto Clear | Sets a time interval after which the copier returns to the initial settings. | 60 sec | 0/30/60/90/120/240sec |
| Preheat Mode | Sets the time that elapses before the copier enters the preheat mode after copying is completed. | 15 min | 1/2/5/10/15/30/60/120/240min |
| Message Time | Sets the length of time that messages are displayed. | Normal (6sec) | Slow (9sec)/Normal (6sec)/Slow (3sec) |
| Disable Auto Paper Selection | Prevents automatic paper selection. |  |  |
| Disable Auto Tray Switching | Prevents automatic switching between the paper trays. |  |  |
| Disable Job Program Changing | Prevents stored programs from being replaced or deleted. |  |  |
| Disable SPF | Prevents the use of the optional document feeder when it malfunctions. |  |  |
| Disable Center Tray Counting | Disables count of paper output tray of the copier. |  |  |
| Disable Auto Power Shut-off | Disables the auto power shut-off mode. |  |  |
| Disable Beep at Key Touch | Enables or disables sounding of beep when keys are touched. |  |  |
| Disable Backlight Change | Disables change of LCD backlighting color. |  |  |
| Total Count | Recalls the total counts, including counts of the copier and document feeder. |  |  |

## SHARP

## COPYRIGHT © 2002 BY SHARP CORPORATION

All rights reserved.
Printed.
No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted,
in any form or by any means, electronic; mechanical; photocopying; recording or otherwise without prior written permission of the publisher.

## Trademark Acknowledgments

Microsoft Windows, MS-DOS, Windows NT, Windows 2000 are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U. S. A. and other countries.
Macintosh, Power Macintosh, Mac OS, LaserWriter, and AppleTalk are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
IBM, PC/ AT, and PowerPC are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
Pentium is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation.
PCL is a trademark of the Hewlett- Packard Company.
PostScript $®$ is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.
All other trademarks and copyrights are the property of their respective owners.


[^0]:    * The other maintenance parts than the above are supplied as service parts.

[^1]:    1 The last digit of the production year.
    2 The prodoction month.
    $X$ stands for October, Y November, and Z December.
    3,4 Production date.

[^2]:    Setup of various copy conditions: Similar to the normal copy mode.

